

BASIC COMPILER FOR MICROCHIP PIC MICROCONTROLLERS

# mikroBASIC

Making it simple

manual  
user's



Develop your applications quickly and easily with the world's most intuitive BASIC compiler for PIC Microcontrollers (families PIC12, PIC16, and PIC18).

Highly sophisticated IDE provides the power you need with the simplicity of a Windows based point-and-click environment.

With useful implemented tools, many practical code examples, broad set of built-in routines, and a comprehensive Help, mikroBASIC makes a fast and reliable tool, which can satisfy needs of experienced engineers and beginners alike.

**Reader's note****DISCLAIMER:**

mikroBasic and this manual are owned by mikroElektronika and are protected by copyright law and international copyright treaty. Therefore, you should treat this manual like any other copyrighted material (e.g., a book). The manual and the compiler may not be copied, partially or as a whole without the written consent from the mikroElektronika. The PDF-edition of the manual can be printed for private or local use, but not for distribution. Modifying the manual or the compiler is strictly prohibited.

**HIGH RISK ACTIVITIES**

The mikroBasic compiler is not fault-tolerant and is not designed, manufactured or intended for use or resale as on-line control equipment in hazardous environments requiring fail-safe performance, such as in the operation of nuclear facilities, aircraft navigation or communication systems, air traffic control, direct life support machines, or weapons systems, in which the failure of the Software could lead directly to death, personal injury, or severe physical or environmental damage ("High Risk Activities"). mikroElektronika and its suppliers specifically disclaim any express or implied warranty of fitness for High Risk Activities.

**LICENSE AGREEMENT:**

By using the mikroBasic compiler, you agree to the terms of this agreement. Only one person may use licensed version of mikroBasic compiler at a time.  
Copyright © mikroElektronika 2003 - 2006.

This manual covers mikroBasic version 4.0 and the related topics. New versions may contain changes without prior notice.

**COMPILER BUG REPORTS:**

The compiler has been carefully tested and debugged. It is, however, not possible to guarantee a 100% error free product. If you would like to report a bug, please contact us at the address [office@mikroelektronika.co.yu](mailto:office@mikroelektronika.co.yu). Please include the following information in your bug report:

- Your operating system
- Version of mikroBasic
- Code sample
- Description of a bug

**CONTACT US:**

mikroElektronika

Voice: + 381 (11) 30 66 377, + 381 (11) 30 66 378

Fax: + 381 (11) 30 66 379

Web: [www.mikroelektronika.co.yu](http://www.mikroelektronika.co.yu)

E-mail: [office@mikroelektronika.co.yu](mailto:office@mikroelektronika.co.yu)

*PIC, PICmicro and MPLAB is a Registered trademark of Microchip company. Windows is a Registered trademark of Microsoft Corp. All other trade and/or services marks are the property of the respective owners.*

# mikroBASIC User's manual



---

## Table of Contents

---

<b>CHAPTER 1</b>	mikroBasic IDE
<b>CHAPTER 2</b>	Building Applications
<b>CHAPTER 3</b>	mikroBasic Reference
<b>CHAPTER 4</b>	mikroBasic Libraries

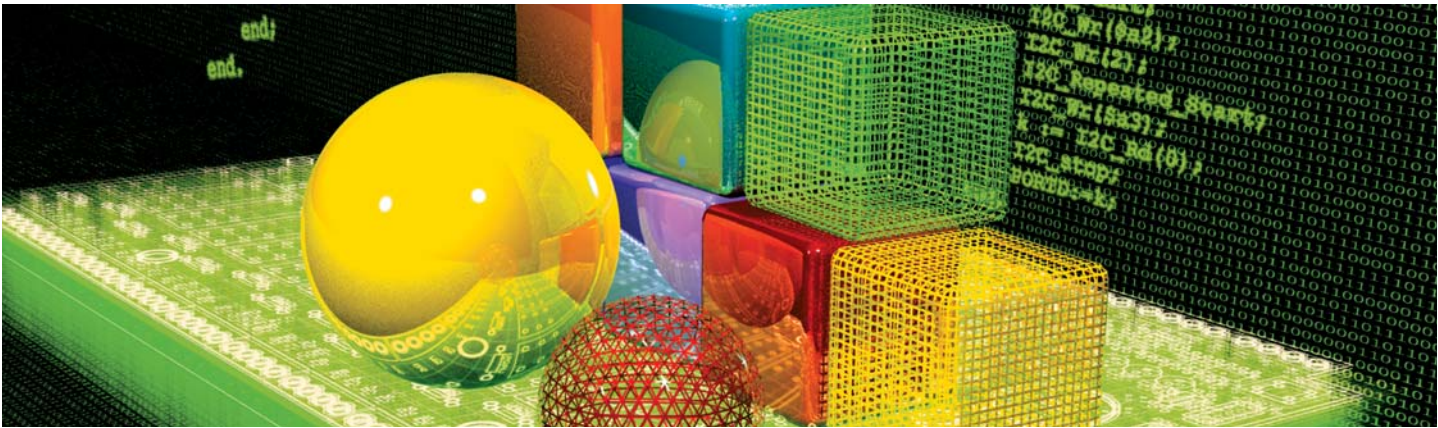
<b>CHAPTER 1: mikroBasic IDE</b>	<b>1</b>
Quick Overview	1
Code Editor	3
Code Explorer	6
Debugger	7
Error Window	10
Statistics	11
Integrated Tools	14
Keyboard Shortcuts	17
 <b>CHAPTER 2: Building Applications</b>	 <b>19</b>
Projects	20
Source Files	21
Search Paths	21
Managing Source Files	21
Compilation	23
Output Files	23
Assembly View	23
Error Messages	24
 <b>CHAPTER 3: mikroBasic Language Reference</b>	 <b>27</b>
PIC Specifics	28
mikroBasic Specifics	30
Predefined Globals and Constants	30
Accessing Individual Bits	30
Interrupts	31
Linker Directives	32
Code Optimization	34
Lexical Elements	35
Whitespace	36
Comments	36
Tokens	37
Literals	38
Integer Literals	38
Floating Point Literals	38
Character Literals	39
String Literals	39
Keywords	40
Identifiers	41

Punctuators	42
Program Organization	44
Scope and Visibility	47
Modules	48
Include Clause	48
Main Module	49
Other Modules	50
Variables	51
Constants	52
Labels	53
Symbols	54
Functions and Procedures	55
Functions	55
Procedures	56
Types	58
Simple Types	59
Arrays	60
Multidimensional Arrays	61
Strings	62
Pointers	63
Structures	64
Types Conversions	66
Implicit Conversion	66
Explicit Conversion	67
Arithmetic Conversion	68
Operators	69
Precedence and Associativity	69
Arithmetic Operators	70
Relational Operators	71
Bitwise Operators	72
Expressions	75
Statements	76
asm Statement	76
Migration from v2.xx to v4.xx	77
Assignment Statements	78
Conditional Statements	78
Iteration Statements	81
Jump Statements	83
Compiler Directives	86

**CHAPTER 4: mikroBasic Libraries 89**

Built-in Routines	90
Library Routines	96
ADC Library	97
CAN Library	99
CAN Constants	105
CANSPI Library	111
Compact Flash Library	120
EEPROM Library	132
Ethernet Library	134
Flash Memory Library	146
I2C Library	148
Keypad Library	153
LCD Library (4-bit interface)	157
Custom LCD Library (4-bit interface)	162
LCD Library (8-bit interface)	167
Graphic LCD Library	172
Manchester Code Library	183
Multi Media Card Library	189
OneWire Library	202
PS/2 Library	206
PWM Library	209
RS-485 Library	212
Software I2C Library	218
Software SPI Library	222
Software UART Library	225
Sound Library	228
SPI Library	230
SPI Compact Flash Library	235
SPI Expander Library	245
SPI GLCD Library	251
USART Library	261
USB HID Library	265
Util Library	270
Conversions Library	271
Delays Library	276
Math Library	278
String Library	285





---

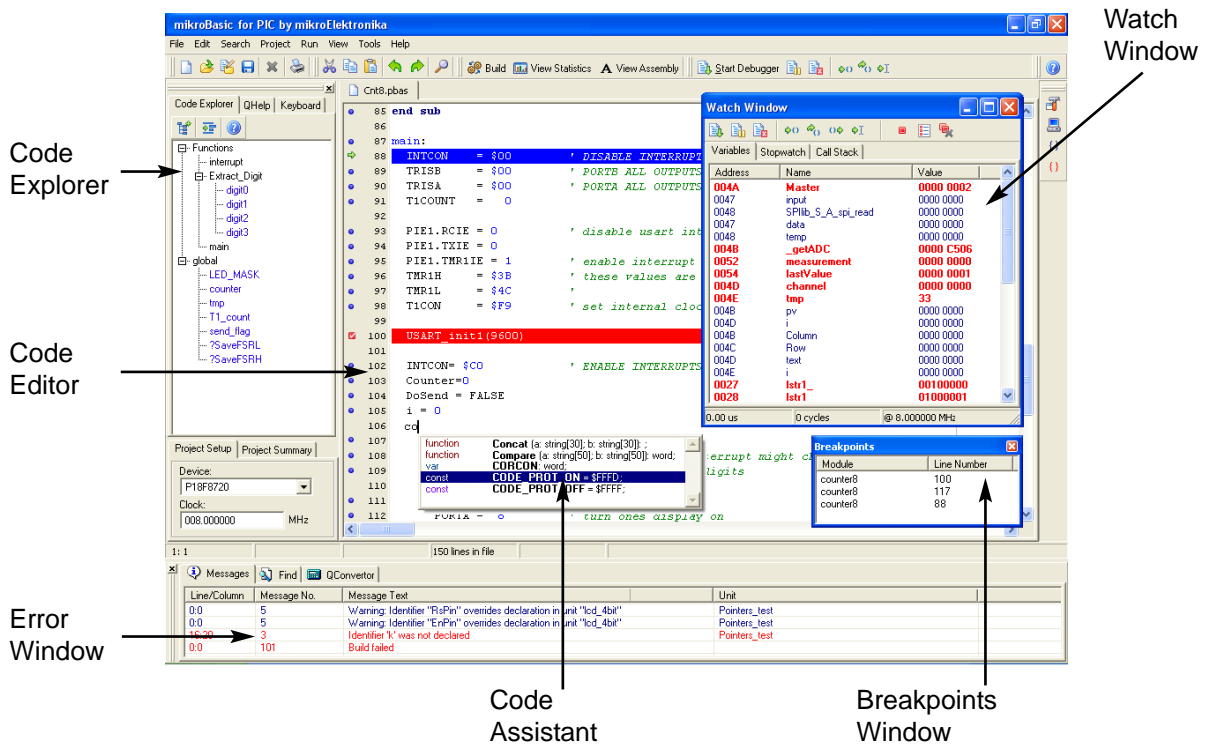
# mikroBasic IDE

---

## QUICK OVERVIEW

mikroBasic is a powerful, feature rich development tool for PIC microcontrollers. It is designed to provide the customer with the easiest possible solution for developing applications for embedded systems, without compromising performance or control.

Highly advanced IDE, broad set of hardware libraries, comprehensive documentation, and plenty of ready to run examples should be more than enough to get you started in programming microcontrollers.



mikroBasic allows you to quickly develop and deploy complex applications:

- Write your BASIC source code using the highly advanced Code Editor
- Use the included mikroBasic libraries to dramatically speed up the development: data acquisition, memory, displays, conversions, communications...
- Monitor your program structure, variables, and functions in the Code Explorer. Generate commented, human-readable assembly, and standard HEX compatible with all programmers.
- Inspect program flow and debug executable logic with the integrated Debugger. Get detailed reports and graphs on code statistics, assembly listing, calling tree...
- We have provided plenty of examples for you to expand, develop, and use as building bricks in your projects.



## CODE EDITOR

The Code Editor is advanced text editor fashioned to satisfy the needs of professionals. General code editing is same as working with any standard text-editor, including familiar Copy, Paste, and Undo actions, common for Windows environment.

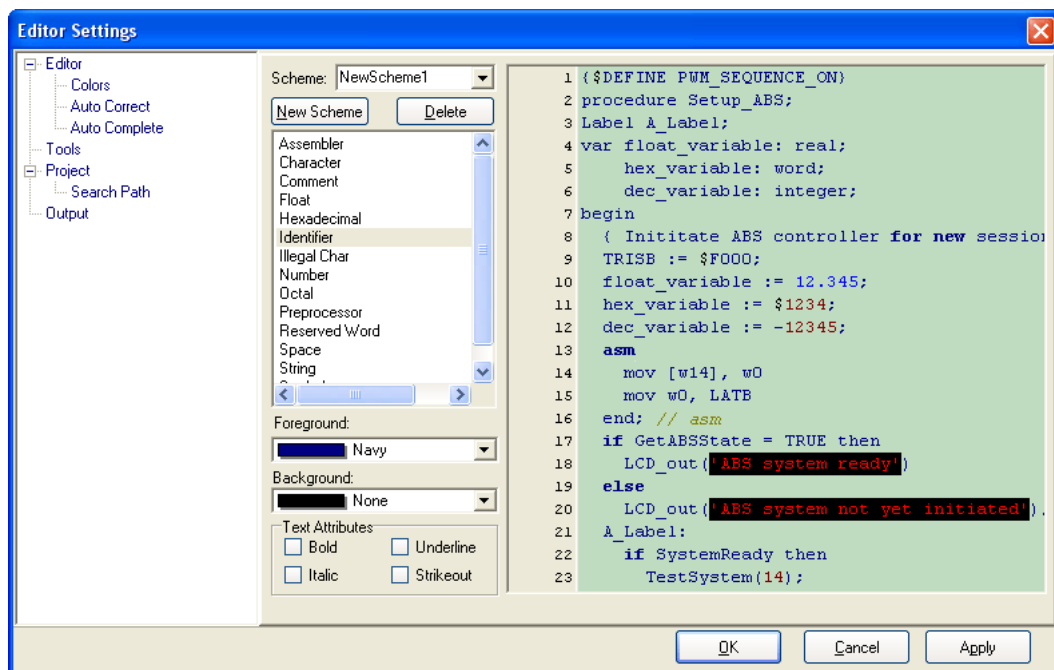
Advanced Editor features include:

- Adjustable Syntax Highlighting
- Code Assistant
- Parameter Assistant
- Code Templates
- Auto Correct for common typos
- Bookmarks and Goto Line

You can customize these options from Editor Settings dialog. To access the settings, click Tools > Options from the drop-down menu, or click the Tools icon.

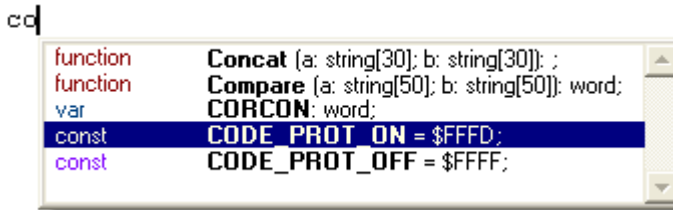


Tools Icon.



## Code Assistant [CTRL+SPACE]

If you type first few letter of a word and then press CTRL+SPACE, all valid identifiers matching the letters you typed will be prompted to you in a floating panel (see the image). Now you can keep typing to narrow the choice, or you can select one from the list using the keyboard arrows and Enter.



## Parameter Assistant [CTRL+SHIFT+SPACE]

The Parameter Assistant will be automatically invoked when you open a parenthesis "(" or press CTRL+SHIFT+SPACE. If name of valid function or procedure precedes the parenthesis, then the expected parameters will be prompted to you in a floating panel. As you type the actual parameter, next expected parameter will become bold.



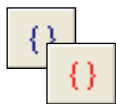
## Code Template [CTR+J]

You can insert the Code Template by typing the name of the template (for instance, *whileb*), then press CTRL+J, and Editor will automatically generate code. Or you can click button from Code toolbar and select template from the list.

You can add your own templates to the list. Just select Tools > Options from the drop-down menu, or click the Tools Icon from the Settings Toolbar, and then select the Auto Complete Tab. Here you can enter the appropriate keyword, description, and code of your template.

## Auto Correct

The Auto Correct feature corrects some common typing mistakes. To access the list of recognized typos, select Tools > Options from the drop-down menu, or click Tools Icon from Settings Toolbar, and then select Auto Correct Tab. You can also add your own preferences to the list.



Comment /  
Uncomment Icon.

## Comment/Uncomment

The Code Editor allows you to comment or uncomment selected block of code by a simple click of a mouse, using the Comment/Uncomment icons from the Code Toolbar.

## Bookmarks

Bookmarks make navigation through large code easier.

CTRL+<number> : Goto bookmark

CTRL+SHIFT+<number> : Set bookmark

## Goto Line

Goto Line option makes navigation through large code easier. Select Search > Goto Line from the drop-down menu, or use the shortcut CTRL+G.

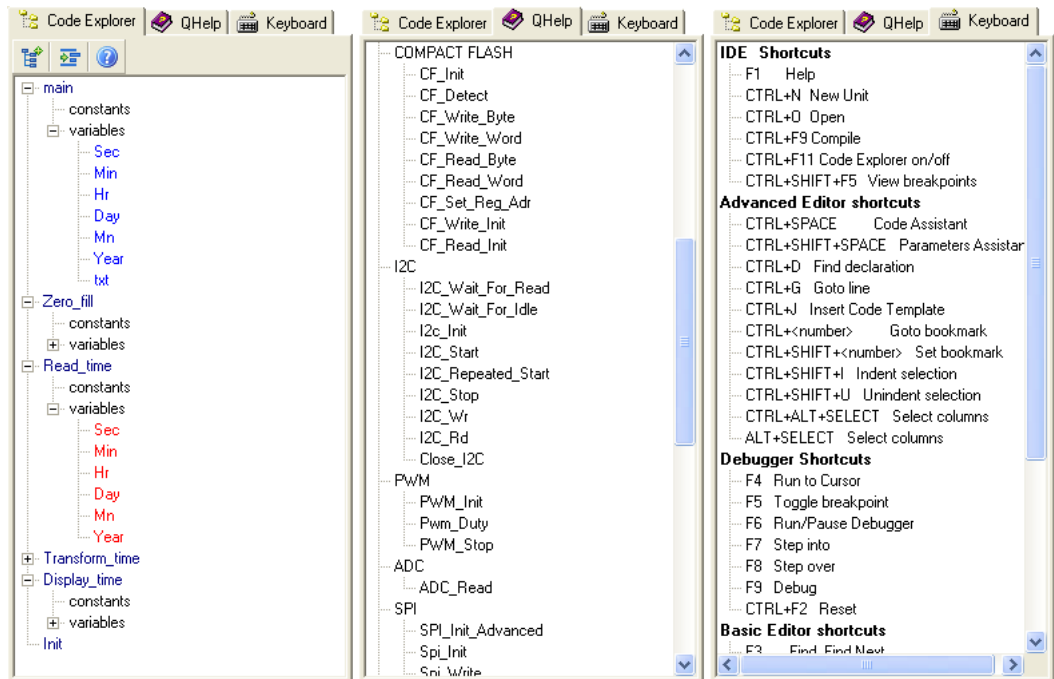
## CODE EXPLORER

The Code Explorer is placed to the left of the main window by default, and gives clear view of every declared item in the source code. You can jump to declaration of any item by right clicking it, or by clicking the Find Declaration icon. To expand or collapse treeview in Code Explorer, use the Collapse/Expand All icon.



Collapse/Expand All Icon.

Also, two more tab windows are available in the Code Explorer. QHelp Tab lists all the available built-in and library functions, for a quick reference. Double-clicking a routine in the QHelp Tab opens the relevant Help topic. Keyboard Tab lists all the available keyboard shortcuts in mikroBasic.



## DEBUGGER



Start Debugger.

Source-level Debugger is an integral component of mikroBasic development environment. It is designed to simulate operations of Microchip Technology's PICmicros and to assist users in debugging software written for these devices.

Debugger simulates program flow and execution of instruction lines, but does not fully emulate PIC device behavior: it does not update timers, interrupt flags, etc.

After you have successfully compiled your project, you can run the Debugger by selecting Run > Debug from the drop-down menu, or by clicking Debug Icon . Starting the Debugger makes more options available: Step Into, Step Over, Run to Cursor, etc. Line that is to be executed is color highlighted.



Pause Debugger.

### Debug [F9]

Start the Debugger.

### Run/Pause Debugger [F6]

Run or pause the Debugger.



Step Into.

### Step Into [F7]

Execute the current BASIC (single- or multi-cycle) instruction, then halt. If the instruction is a routine call, enter the routine and halt at the first instruction following the call.



Step Over.

### Step Over [F8]

Execute the current BASIC (single- or multi-cycle) instruction, then halt. If the instruction is a routine call, skip it and halt at the first instruction following the call.



Step Out.

### Step Out [Ctrl+F8]

Execute the current BASIC (single- or multi-cycle) instruction, then halt. If the instruction is within a routine, execute the instruction and halt at the first instruction following the call.



Run to Cursor.

### Run to cursor [F4]

Executes all instructions between the current instruction and the cursor position.



Jump to Interrupt.

### Jump to Interrupt [F2]

Jump to address \$04 for PIC12/16 or to address \$08 for PIC18 and execute the procedure located at that address.



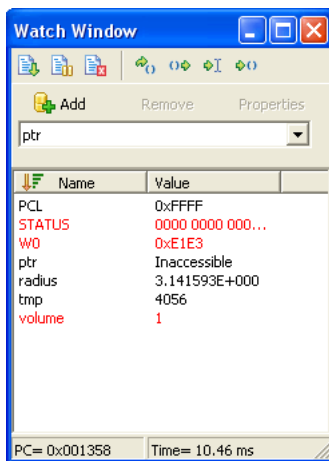
Toggle Breakpoint.

### Toggle Breakpoint [F5]

Toggle breakpoint at the current cursor position. To view all the breakpoints, select Run > View Breakpoints from the drop-down menu. Double clicking an item in window list locates the breakpoint.

## Watch Window

Debugger Watch Window is the main Debugger window which allows you to monitor program items while running your program. To show the Watch Window, select View > Debug Windows > Watch Window from the drop-down menu.



The Watch Window displays variables and registers of PIC, with their addresses and values. Values are updated as you go through the simulation. Use the drop-down menu to add and remove the items that you want to monitor. Recently changed items are colored red.

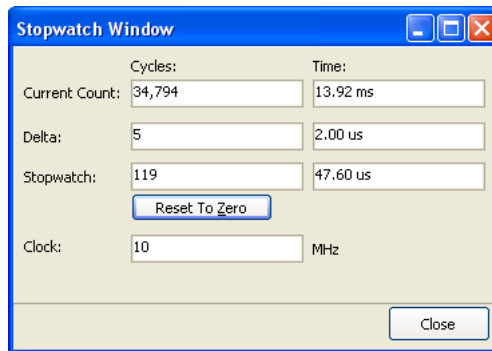
Double clicking an item opens the Edit Value window in which you can assign a new value to the selected variable/register. Also, you can change view to binary, hex, char, or decimal for the selected item.



## Stopwatch Window

Debugger Stopwatch Window is available from the drop-down menu, View > Debug Windows > Stopwatch.

The Stopwatch Window displays the current count of cycles/time since the last Debugger action. Stopwatch measures the execution time (number of cycles) from the moment Debugger is started, and can be reset at any time. Delta represents the number of cycles between the previous instruction line (line where the Debugger action was performed) and the active instruction line (where the Debugger action landed).



**Note:** You can change the clock in the Stopwatch Window; this will recalculate values for the newly specified frequency. Changing the clock in the Stopwatch Window does not affect the actual project settings – it only provides a simulation.

## View RAM Window

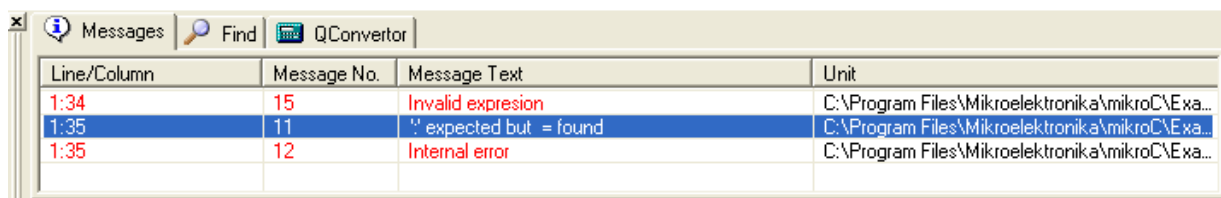
Debugger View RAM Window is available from the drop-down menu, View > Debug Windows > View RAM.

The View RAM Window displays the map of PIC's RAM, with recently changed items colored red. You can change value of any field by double-clicking it.

## ERROR WINDOW

In case that errors were encountered during compiling, compiler will report them and won't generate a hex file. The Error Window will be prompted at the bottom of the main window.

Error Window is located under message tab, and displays location and type of errors compiler has encountered. The compiler also reports warnings, but these do not affect generating hex code. Only errors can interfere with generation of hex.



Line/Column	Message No.	Message Text	Unit
1:34	15	Invalid expression	C:\Program Files\Mikroelektronika\mikroC\Exa...
1:35	11	' expected but = found	C:\Program Files\Mikroelektronika\mikroC\Exa...
1:35	12	Internal error	C:\Program Files\Mikroelektronika\mikroC\Exa...

Double click the message line in the Error Window to highlight the line where the error was encountered.

Consult the Error Messages for more information about errors recognized by the compiler.

## STATISTICS

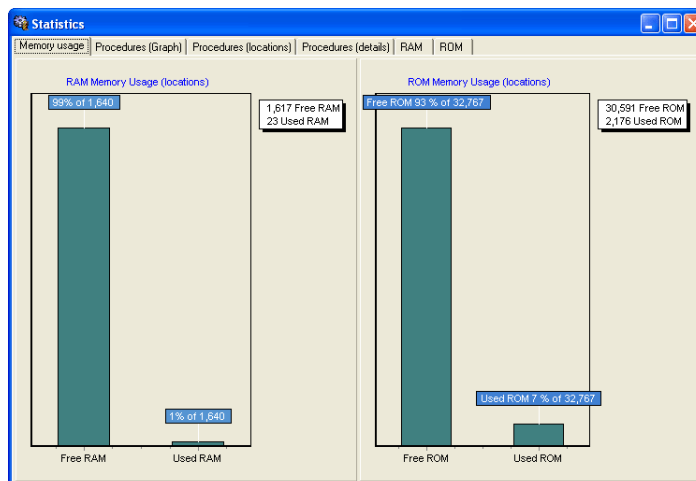


Statistics Icon.

After successful compilation, you can review statistics of your code. Select Project > View Statistics from the drop-down menu, or click the Statistics icon. There are six tab windows:

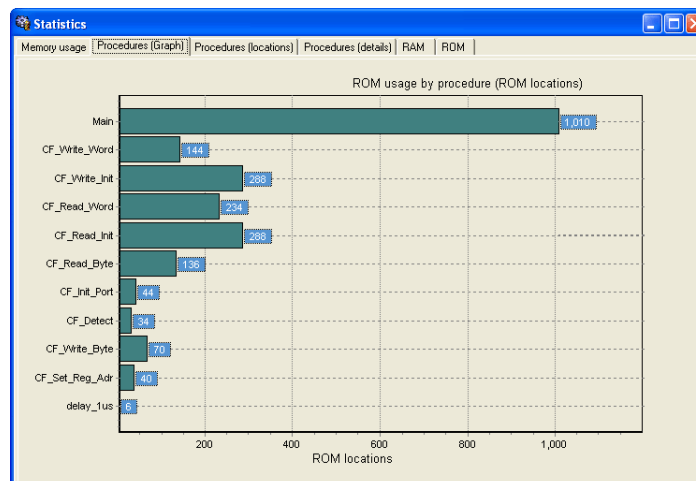
### Memory Usage Window

Provides overview of RAM and ROM memory usage in form of histogram.



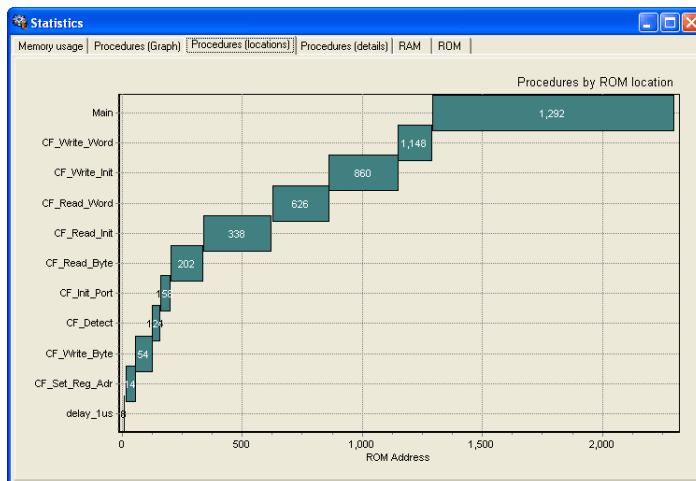
### Procedures (Graph) Window

Displays functions in form of histogram, according to their memory allotment.



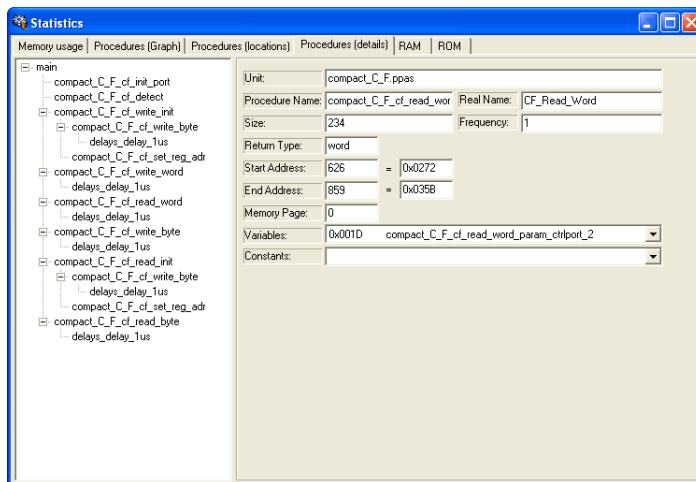
## Procedures (Locations) Window

Displays how functions are distributed in microcontroller's memory.



## Procedures (Details) Window

Displays complete call tree, along with details for each procedure and function:



size, start and end address, calling frequency, return type, etc.

## RAM Window

Summarizes all GPR and SFR registers and their addresses. Also displays symbolic names of variables and their addresses.

General purpose registers (GPR)		Special function registers (SFR)	
Address	Register	Address	Register
0x000C	__empty	0x0FE7	INDF1
0x000D	__empty	0x0FE6	POSTINC1
0x000E	__empty	0x0FE5	POSTDEC1
0x000F	__empty	0x0FE4	PREINC1
0x0010	__empty	0x0FE3	PLUSW1
0x0011	__empty	0x0FE2	FSR1H
0x0012	__empty	0x0FE1	FSR1L
0x0013	__empty	0x0FE0	BSR
0x0014	__empty	0x0FDF	INDF2
0x0015	main_global_i_1	0x0FDE	POSTINC2
0x0016	main_global_i_2	0x0FDD	POSTDEC2
0x0017	compact_C_F_of_write_byte_param_ctlport_1	0x0FDC	PREINC2
0x0017	compact_C_F_of_set_reg_adr_param_ctlport_1	0x0FDB	PLUSW2
0x0018	compact_C_F_of_write_byte_param_ctlport_2	0x0FDA	FSR2H
0x0018	compact_C_F_of_set_reg_adr_param_ctlport_2	0x0FD9	FSR2L
0x0019	compact_C_F_of_write_byte_param_dataport_1	0x0FD8	STATUS
0x0019	compact_C_F_of_set_reg_adr_param_adr	0x0FD7	TMR0H
0x001A	compact_C_F_of_write_byte_param_dataport_2	0x0FD6	TMR0L
0x001B	compact_C_F_of_write_byte_param_bdata	0x0FD5	TOCON
0x001C	compact_C_F_of_write_init_param_ctlport_1	0x0FD3	OSCCON

## ROM Window

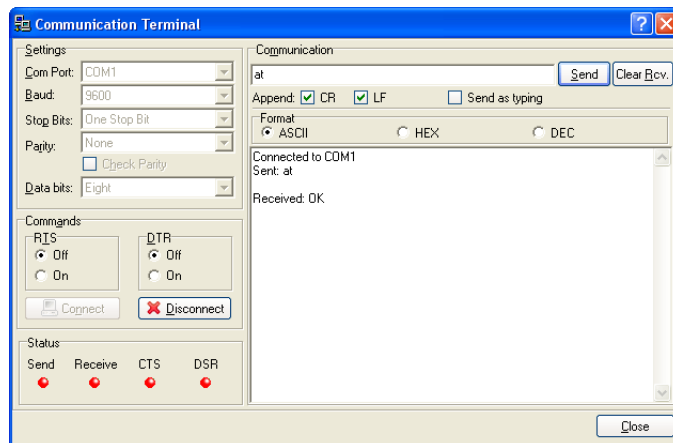
Lists op-codes and their addresses in form of a human readable hex code.

	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	0A
0010	EF86	F002	FFFF	FFFF	0100	0000	0012	0100	C017	FFE9
0020	C018	FFEA	50EF	6E01	0EF8	1401	6E00	5019	1000	6E00
0030	C017	FFE9	C018	FFEA	C000	FFEF	0012	0100	C019	FFE9
0040	C01A	FFEA	C018	FFEF	C017	FFE9	C018	FFEA	6A00	BEEF
0050	2A00	1C00	6E00	0EFF	5C00	E103	0000	EF22	F000	EC04
0060	F000	C017	FFE9	C018	FFEA	9CEF	EC04	F000	8CEF	EC04
0070	F000	0012	0100	6A1E	C01C	FFE9	C01D	FFEA	6A00	B8EF
0080	2A00	0E00	5C00	E104	0EFF	6E1E	EF4E	F000	0012	0100
0090	C01C	FFE9	C01D	FFEA	0E60	6EEF	0E12	26E9	6AEF	88EF
00A0	8EEF	C01E	FFE9	C01F	FFEA	0E00	6EEF	0E12	26E9	6AEF
00B0	0012	0100	C01E	FFE9	C01F	FFEA	0EAA	6EEF	0E12	26E9
00C0	0EFF	6EEF	EC04	F000	C01C	FFE9	C01D	FFEA	6A00	BEEF
00D0	2A00	0E00	5C00	E103	0000	EF72	F000	EC04	F000	C01C
00E0	FFE9	C01D	FFEA	9AEF	EC04	F000	C01E	FFE9	C01F	FFEA
00F0	50EF	6E20	EC04	F000	C01C	FFE9	C01D	FFEA	50EF	6E01
0100	C01C	FFE9	C01D	FFEA	C001	FFEF	9AEF	EC04	F000	C01E

## INTEGRATED TOOLS

### USART Terminal

mikroBASIC includes the USART (Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter) communication terminal for RS232 communication. You can launch it from the drop-down menu Tools > Terminal or by clicking the Terminal icon.



### ASCII Chart

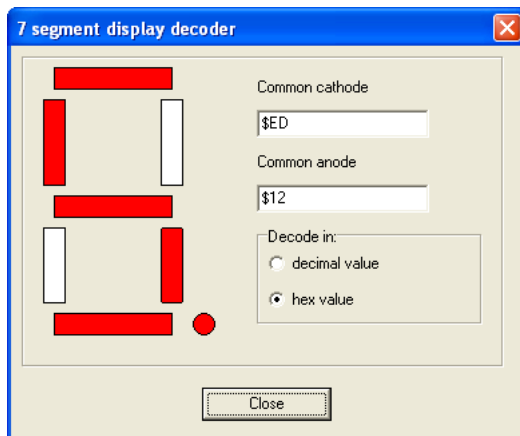
ASCII Chart is a handy tool, particularly useful when working with LCD display. You can launch it from the drop-down menu Tools > ASCII chart.

CHAR	DEC	HEX	BIN
NUL	0	0x00	0000 0000
SOH	1	0x01	0000 0001
STX	2	0x02	0000 0010
ETX	3	0x03	0000 0011
EOT	4	0x04	0000 0100
ENQ	5	0x05	0000 0101
ACK	6	0x06	0000 0110
BEL	7	0x07	0000 0111
BS	8	0x08	0000 1000
HT	9	0x09	0000 1001
LF	10	0x0A	0000 1010
VT	11	0x0B	0000 1011
FF	12	0x0C	0000 1100
CR	13	0x0D	0000 1101



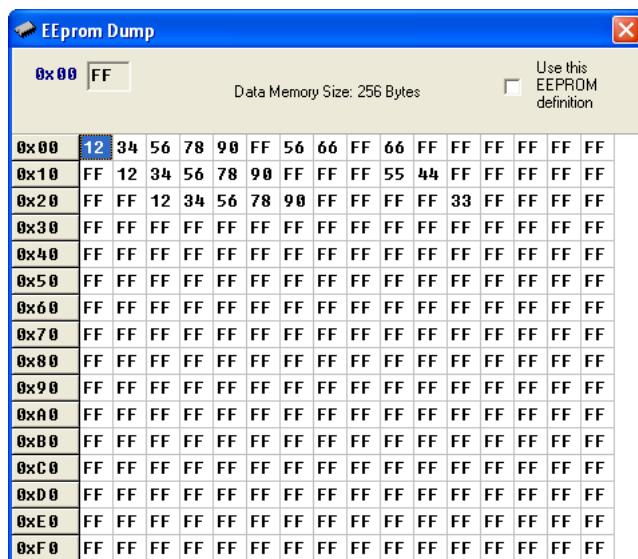
## 7 Segment Display Decoder

The 7seg Display Decoder is a convenient visual panel which returns decimal/hex value for any viable combination you would like to display on 7seg. Click on the parts of 7 segment image to the left to get the desired value in the edit boxes. You can launch it from the drop-down menu Tools > 7 Segment Display.



## EEPROM Editor

EEPROM Editor allows you to easily manage EEPROM of PIC microcontroller.



## **mikroBootloader**

mikroBootloader can be used only with PICmicros that support flash write.

1. Load the PIC with the appropriate hex file using the conventional programming techniques (e.g. for PIC16F877A use p16f877a.hex).
2. Start mikroBootloader from the drop-down menu Tools > Bootloader.
3. Click on Setup Port and select the COM port that will be used. Make sure that BAUD is set to 9600 Kpbs.
4. Click on Open File and select the HEX file you would like to upload.
5. Since the bootcode in the PIC only gives the computer 4-5 sec to connect, you should reset the PIC and then click on the Connect button within 4-5 seconds.
6. The last line in then history window should now read "Connected".
7. To start the upload, just click on the Start Bootloader button.
8. Your program will written to the PIC flash. Bootloader will report an errors that may occur.
9. Reset your PIC and start to execute.

The boot code gives the computer 5 seconds to get connected to it. If not, it starts running the existing user code. If there is a new user code to be downloaded, the boot code receives and writes the data into program memory.

The more common features a bootloader may have are listed below:

- Code at the Reset location.
- Code elsewhere in a small area of memory.
- Checks to see if the user wants new user code to be loaded.
- Starts execution of the user code if no new user code is to be loaded.
- Receives new user code via a communication channel if code is to be loaded.
- Programs the new user code into memory.

### **Integrating User Code and Boot Code**

The boot code almost always uses the Reset location and some additional program memory. It is a simple piece of code that does not need to use interrupts; therefore, the user code can use the normal interrupt vector at 0x0004. The boot code must avoid using the interrupt vector, so it should have a program branch in the address range 0x0000 to 0x0003. The boot code must be programmed into memory using conventional programming techniques, and the configuration bits must be programmed at this time. The boot code is unable to access the configuration bits, since they are not mapped into the program memory space.

## KEYBOARD SHORTCUTS

Below is the complete list of keyboard shortcuts available in mikroBasic IDE. You can also view keyboard shortcuts in the Code Explorer, tab Keyboard.

### IDE Shortcuts

F1	Help
CTRL+N	New Unit
CTRL+O	Open
CTRL+F9	Compile
CTRL+F11	Code Explorer on/off
CTRL+SHIFT+F5	View breakpoints

### Basic Editor shortcuts

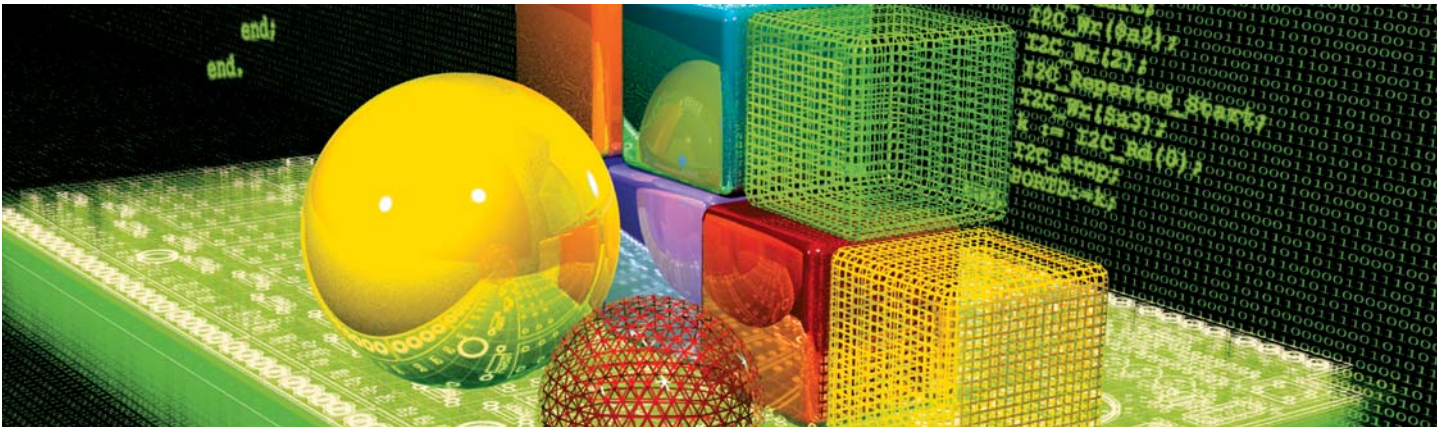
F3	Find, Find Next
CTRL+A	Select All
CTRL+C	Copy
CTRL+F	Find
CTRL+P	Print
CTRL+R	Replace
CTRL+S	Save unit
CTRL+SHIFT+S	Save As
CTRL+V	Paste
CTRL+X	Cut
CTRL+Y	Redo
CTRL+Z	Undo

### Advanced Editor shortcuts

CTRL+SPACE	Code Assistant
CTRL+SHIFT+SPACE	Parameters Assistant
CTRL+D	Find declaration
CTRL+G	Goto line
CTRL+J	Insert Code Template
CTRL+<number>	Goto bookmark
CTRL+SHIFT+<number>	Set bookmark
CTRL+SHIFT+I	Indent selection
CTRL+SHIFT+U	Unindent selection
CTRL+ALT+SELECT	Select columns

## Debugger Shortcuts

F4	Run to Cursor
F5	Toggle breakpoint
F6	Run/Pause Debugger
F7	Step into
F8	Step over
CTRL+F8	Step out
F9	Debug
F2	Jump to Interrupt
CTRL+F2	Reset



---

# Building Applications

---

Creating applications in mikroBasic is easy and intuitive. Project Wizard allows you to set up your project in just few clicks: name your application, select chip, set flags, and get going.

mikroBasic allows you to distribute your projects in as many modules as you find appropriate. You can then share your mikroCompiled Libraries (.mcl files) with other developers without disclosing the source code. The best part is that you can use .mcl bundles created by mikroPascal or mikroC!

## PROJECTS

mikroBasic organizes applications into *projects*, consisting of a single project file (extension `.pbp`) and one or more source files (extension `.pbas`). You can compile source files only if they are part of a project.

Project file carries the following information:

- project name and optional description
- target device
- device flags (config word) and device clock
- list of project source files with paths



New Project.

### New Project

The easiest way to create project is by means of New Project Wizard, drop-down menu Project > New Project. Just fill the dialog with desired values (project name and description, location, device, clock, config word) and mikroBasic will create the appropriate project file.

Also, an empty source file named after the project will be created by default. mikroBasic does not require you to have source file named same as the project, it's just a matter of convenience.



Edit Project.

### Editing Project

Later, you can change project settings from the drop-down menu Project > Edit. You can add or remove source files from project, rename the project, modify its description, change chip, clock, config word, etc.

To delete a project, simply delete the folder in which the project file is stored.



## SOURCE FILES

Source files containing BASIC code should have the extension `.pbas`. List of source files relevant for the application is stored in project file with extension `.pbp`, along with other project information. You can compile source files only if they are part of a project.

### Search Paths

You can specify your own custom search paths. This can be configured by selecting Tools > Options from the drop-down menu and Compiler > Search Paths.

When including source files with the `include` clause, mikroBasic will look for the file in following locations, in this particular order:

1. mikroBasic installation folder > “defs” folder
2. mikroBasic installation folder > “uses” folder
3. your custom search paths
4. the project folder (folder which contains the project file `.pbp`)

### Managing Source Files



New File.

#### Creating a new source file

To create a new source file, do the following:

Select File > New from the drop-down menu, or press CTRL+N, or click the New File icon. A new tab will open, named “Untitled1”. This is your new source file. Select File > Save As from the drop-down menu to name it the way you want.

If you have used New Project Wizard, an empty source file, named after the project with extension `.pbas`, is created automatically. mikroBasic does not require you to have the source file named same as the project, it’s just a matter of convenience.



Open File.

### Opening an Existing File

Select File > Open from the drop-down menu, or press CTRL+O, or click the Open File icon. The Select Input File dialog opens. In the dialog, browse to the location of the file you want to open and select it. Click the Open button. The selected file is displayed in its own tab. If the selected file is already open, its current Editor tab will become active.



Print File.

### Printing an Open File

Make sure that window containing the file you want to print is the active window. Select File > Print from the drop-down menu, or press CTRL+P, or click the Print icon. In the Print Preview Window, set the desired layout of the document and click the OK button. The file will be printed on the selected printer.



Save File.

### Saving File

Make sure that window containing the file you want to save is the active window. Select File > Save from the drop-down menu, or press CTRL+S, or click the Save icon. The file will be saved under the name on its window.



Save File As.

### Saving File Under a Different Name

Make sure that window containing the file you want to save is the active window. Select File > Save As from the drop-down menu, or press SHIFT+CTRL+S. The New File Name dialog will be displayed. In the dialog, browse to the folder where you want to save the file. In the File Name field, modify the name of the file you want to save. Click the Save button.



Close File.

### Closing a File

Make sure that tab containing the file you want to close is the active tab. Select File > Close from the drop-down menu, or right click the tab of the file you want to close in Code Editor. If the file has been changed since it was last saved, you will be prompted to save your changes.

## COMPILATION



Build Icon.

When you have created the project and written the source code, you will want to compile it. Select Project > Build from the drop-down menu, or click the Build Icon, or simply hit CTRL+F9.

Progress bar will appear to inform you about the status of compiling. If there are errors, you will be notified in the Error Window. If no errors are encountered, mikroBasic will generate output files.

### Output Files

Upon successful compilation, mikroBasic will generate output files in the project folder (folder which contains the project file .pbp). Output files are summarized below:

#### Intel HEX file (.hex)

Intel style hex records. Use this file to program PIC MCU.

#### Binary mikro Compiled Library (.mcl)

Binary distribution of application that can be included in other projects.

#### List File (.lst)

Overview of PIC memory allotment: instruction addresses, registers, routines, etc.

#### Assembler File (.asm)

Human readable assembly with symbolic names, extracted from the List File.

### Assembly View



View Assembly Icon.

After compiling your program in mikroBasic, you can click View Assembly Icon or select Project > View Assembly from the drop-down menu to review generated assembly code (.asm file) in a new tab window. Assembly is human readable with symbolic names. All physical addresses and other information can be found in Statistics or in list file (.lst).

If the program is not compiled and there is no assembly file, starting this option will compile your code and then display assembly.

## ERROR MESSAGES

### Error Messages

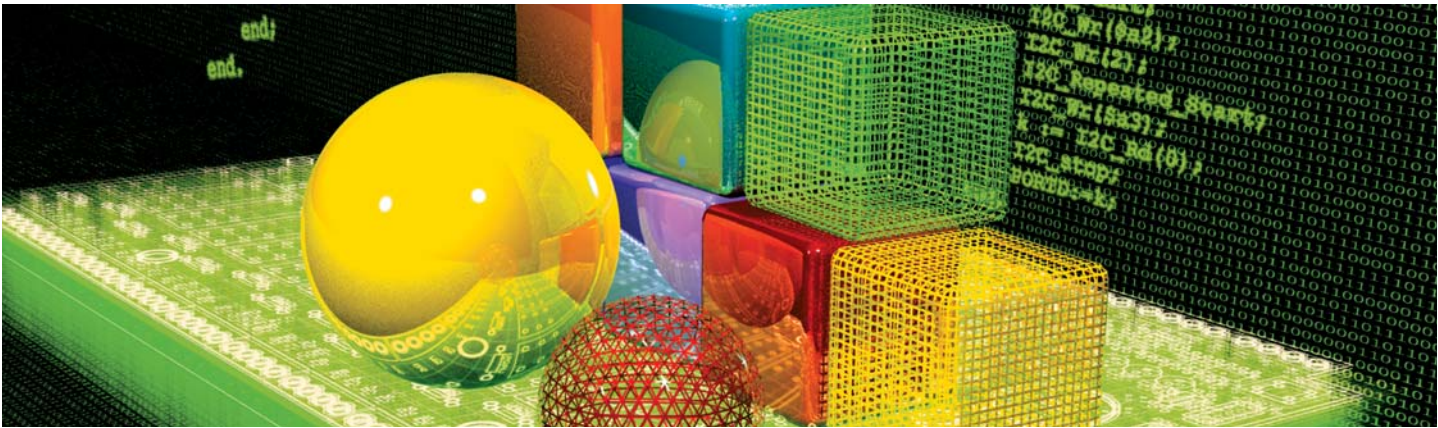
Message	Message Number
<b>Error:</b> "%s" is not a valid identifier	1
<b>Error:</b> Unknown type "%s"	2
<b>Error:</b> Identifier "%s" was not declared	3
<b>Error:</b> Expected "%s" but "%s" found	4
<b>Error:</b> Argument is out of range	5
<b>Error:</b> Syntax error in additive expression	6
<b>Error:</b> File "%s" not found	7
<b>Error:</b> Invalid command "%s"	8
<b>Error:</b> Not enough parameters	9
<b>Error:</b> Too many parameters	10
<b>Error:</b> Too many characters	11
<b>Error:</b> Actual and formal parameters must be identical	12
<b>Error:</b> Invalid ASM instruction: "%s"	13
<b>Error:</b> Identifier "%s" has been already declared	14
<b>Error:</b> Syntax error in multiplicative expression	15
<b>Error:</b> Definition file for "%s" is corrupted	16

## Hint and Warning Messages

Message	Message Number
<b>Hint:</b> Variable "%s" has been declared, but was not used	1
<b>Warning:</b> Variable "%s" is not initialized	2
<b>Warning:</b> Return value of the function "%s" is not defined	3
<b>Hint:</b> Constant "%s" has been declared, but was not used	4
<b>Warning:</b> Identifier "%s" overrides declaration in unit "%s"	5







---

# mikroBasic Language Reference

---

Why BASIC in the first place? The answer is simple: it is legible, easy-to-learn, structured programming language, with sufficient power and flexibility needed for programming microcontrollers. Whether you had any previous programming experience, you will find that writing programs in mikroBasic is very easy. This chapter will help you learn or recollect BASIC syntax, along with the specifics of programming PIC microcontrollers.

## PIC SPECIFICS

In order to get the most from your mikroBasic compiler, you should be familiar with certain aspects of PIC MCU. This knowledge is not essential, but it can provide you a better understanding of PICs' capabilities and limitations, and their impact on the code writing.

### Types Efficiency

First of all, you should know that PIC's ALU, which performs arithmetic operations, is optimized for working with bytes. Although mikroBasic is capable of handling very complex data types, PIC may choke on them, especially if you are working on some of the older models. This can dramatically increase the time needed for performing even simple operations. Universal advice is to use the smallest possible type in every situation. It applies to all programming in general, and doubly so with microcontrollers.

When it comes down to calculus, not all PICmicros are of equal performance. For example, PIC16 family lacks hardware resources to multiply two bytes, so it is compensated by a software algorithm. On the other hand, PIC18 family has HW multiplier, and as a result, multiplication works considerably faster.

### Nested Calls Limitations

Nested call represents a function call within function body, either to itself (recursive calls) or to another function. Recursive calls, as form of cross-calling, are unsupported by mikroBasic due to the PIC's stack and memory limitations.

mikroBasic limits the number of non-recursive nested calls to:

- 8 calls for PIC12 family,
- 8 calls for PIC16 family,
- 31 calls for PIC18 family.

The number of allowed nested calls decreases by one if you use any of the following operators in the code: \* / %. It further decreases by one if you use interrupt in the program. If the allowed number of nested calls is exceeded, compiler will report stack overflow error.

## PIC16 Only Specifics

### Breaking Through Pages

In applications targeted at PIC16, no single routine should exceed one page (2,000 instructions). If routine does not fit within one page, linker will report an error. When confront with this problem, maybe you should rethink the design of your application – try breaking the particular routine into several chunks, etc.

### Limits of Indirect Approach Through FSR

Pointers with PIC16 are “near”: they carry only the lower 8 bits of the address. Compiler will automatically clear the 9th bit upon startup, so that pointers will refer to banks 0 and 1. To access the objects in banks 3 or 4 via pointer, user should manually set the IRP, and restore it to zero after the operation.

**Note:** It is very important to take care of the IRP properly, if you plan to follow this approach. If you find this method to be inappropriate with too many variables, you might consider upgrading to PIC18.

**Note:** If you have many variables in the code, try rearranging them with linker directive `absolute`. Variables that are approached only directly should be moved to banks 3 and 4 for increased efficiency.

## **mikroBASIC SPECIFICS**

### **Predefined Globals and Constants**

To facilitate programming, mikroBasic implements a number of predefined globals and constants.

All PIC SFR registers are implicitly declared as global variables of byte type, and are visible in the entire project. When creating a project, mikroBasic will include an appropriate `.def` file, containing declarations of available SFR and constants (such as `PORTB`, `TMR1`, etc). Identifiers are all in uppercase, identical to nomenclature in Microchip datasheets. For the complete set of predefined globals and constants, look for “Defs” in your mikroBasic installation folder, or probe the Code Assistant for specific letters (CTRL+SPACE in Editor).

### **Accessing Individual Bits**

mikroBasic allows you to access individual bits of variables. Simply use the dot (`.`) with a variable, followed by a number. For example:

```
dim myvar as longint    ' range of bits is myvar.0 .. myvar.31
'...
' If RB0 is set, set the 28th bit of myvar:
if PORTB.0 = 1 then
    myvar.27 = 1
end if
```

There is no need for any special declarations; this kind of selective access is an intrinsic feature of mikroBasic and can be used anywhere in the code. Provided you are familiar with the particular chip, you can access bits by their name (e.g. `INTCON.TMR0F`).

## Interrupts

Interrupts can be easily handled by means of reserved word `interrupt`.  
mikroBasic implicitly declares procedure `interrupt` which cannot be redeclared.

Write your own procedure body to handle interrupts in your application.  
mikroBasic saves the following SFR on stack when entering interrupt and pops them back upon return:

PIC12 family: `W`, `STATUS`, `FSR`, `PCLATH`

PIC16 family: `W`, `STATUS`, `FSR`, `PCLATH`

PIC18 family: `FSR` (fast context is used to save `WREG`, `STATUS`, `BSR`)

**Note:** mikroBasic does not support low priority interrupts; for PIC18 family, interrupts must be of high priority.

### Routine Calls from Interrupt

Calling functions and procedures from within the interrupt routine is now possible. The compiler takes care about the registers being used, both in "interrupt" and in "main" thread, and performs "smart" context-switching between the two, saving only the registers that have been used in both threads.

The functions and procedures that don't have their own frame (no arguments and local variables) can be called both from the interrupt and the "main" thread.

### Interrupt Examples

Here is a simple example of handling the interrupts from TMR0 (if no other interrupts are allowed):

```
sub procedure interrupt
    counter = counter + 1
    TMR0 = 96
    INTCON = $20
end sub
```

## Linker Directives

mikroBasic uses internal algorithm to distribute objects within memory. If you need to have variable or routine at specific predefined address, use linker directives `absolute` and `org`.

### Directive `absolute`

Directive `absolute` specifies the starting address in RAM for variable. If variable is multi-byte, higher bytes are stored at consecutive locations.

Directive `absolute` is appended to the declaration of variable:

```
dim x as byte absolute $22
' Variable x will occupy 1 byte at address $22

dim y as word absolute $23
' Variable y will occupy 2 bytes at addresses $23 and $24
```

Be careful when using `absolute` directive, as you may overlap two variables by mistake. For example:

```
dim i as byte absolute $33
' Variable i will occupy 1 byte at address $33

dim jjjj as longint absolute $30
' Variable jjjj will occupy bytes at $30, $31, $32, $33; thus,
' changing i changes jjjj highest byte at the same time
```

### Directive `org`

Directive `org` specifies the starting address of routine in ROM. It is appended to the declaration of routine. For example:

```
sub procedure proc(dim par as byte) org $200
' Procedure proc will start at address $200
...
end sub
```

**Note:** Directive `org` can be applied to any routine except the interrupt procedure. Interrupt will always be located at address \$4 (or \$8 for P18), Page0.

**Directive volatile**

Directive volatile gives variable possibility to change without intervention from code.

Typical volatile variables are: STATUS, TIMER0, TIMER1, PORTA, PORTB etc.

```
dim MyVar as byte absolute $123 register volatile
```

## Code Optimization

Optimizer has been added to extend the compiler usability, cuts down the amount of code generated and speed-up its execution. Main features are:

### Constant folding

All expressions that can be evaluated in the compile time (i.e. are constant) are being replaced by their result. (3 + 5 -> 8);

### Constant propagation

When a constant value is being assigned to certain variable, the compiler recognizes this and replaces the use of the variable in the code that follows by constant, as long as variable's value remains unchanged.

### Copy propagation

The compiler recognizes that two variables have same value and eliminates one of them in the further code.

### Value numbering

The compiler "recognize" if the two expressions yield the same result, and can therefore eliminate the entire computation for one of them.

### "Dead code" elimination

The code snippets that are not being used elsewhere in the programme do not affect the final result of the application. They are automatically being removed.

### Stack allocation

Temporary registers ("Stacks") are being used more rationally, allowing for VERY complex expressions to be evaluated with minimum stack consumption.

### Local vars optimization

No local variables are being used if their result does not affect some of the global or volatile variables.

### Better code generation and local optimization

Code generation is more consistent, and much attention has been made to implement specific solutions for the code "building bricks" that further reduce output code size.



## LEXICAL ELEMENTS

These topics provide a formal definition of the mikroBasic lexical elements. They describe the different categories of word-like units (tokens) recognized by a language.

In the tokenizing phase of compilation, the source code file is parsed (that is, broken down) into *tokens* and *whitespace*. The tokens in mikroBasic are derived from a series of operations performed on your programs by the compiler.

A mikroBasic program starts as a sequence of ASCII characters representing the source code, created by keystrokes using a suitable text editor (such as the mikroBasic Code Editor). The basic program unit in mikroBasic is the file. This usually corresponds to a named file located in RAM or on disk and having the extension `.pbas`.

### Whitespace

Whitespace is the collective name given to spaces (blanks), horizontal and vertical tabs, and comments. Whitespace serves to indicate where tokens start and end, but beyond this function, any surplus whitespace is discarded.

For example, the two sequences

```
dim tmp as byte
dim j as word
```

and

```
dim tmp as byte
dim j as word
```

are lexically equivalent and parse identically.

**Note:** Newline character (CR/LF) is not a whitespace in BASIC, and serves as a statement terminator/separator. In mikroBasic, however, you *may* use newline to break long statements into several lines. Parser will first try to get the longest possible expression (across lines if necessary), and then check for statement terminators.

## Newline Character

Newline character (CR/LF) is not a whitespace in BASIC, and serves as a statement terminator/separator. Optionally, you may use newline to break very long statements into several lines, as parser will first try to get the longest possible expression. See Statements for more information.

## Whitespace in Strings

The ASCII characters representing whitespace can occur within string literals, in which case they are protected from the normal parsing process (they remain as part of the string). For example, statement

```
some_string = "mikro foo"
```

parses to four tokens, including the single string literal token:

```
some_string  
=  
"mikro foo"  
newline character
```

## Comments

Comments are pieces of text used to annotate a program, and are technically another form of whitespace. Comments are for the programmer's use only; they are stripped from the source text before parsing.

Use the apostrophe to create a comment:

```
' Any text between an apostrophe and the end of the  
' line constitutes a comment. May span one line only.
```

Multi-line comments are not supported in BASIC.

## TOKENS

Token is the smallest element of a BASIC program that is meaningful to the compiler. The parser separates tokens from the input stream by creating the longest token possible using the input characters in a left-to-right scan.

mikroBasic recognizes these kinds of tokens:

- keywords
- identifiers
- constants
- operators
- punctuators (also known as separators)

### Token Extraction Example

Here is an example of token extraction. Let's have the following code sequence:

```
end_flag = 0
```

The compiler would parse it as the following four tokens:

<code>end_flag</code>	<i>' variable identifier</i>
<code>=</code>	<i>' assignment operator</i>
<code>0</code>	<i>' literal</i>
<code>newline</code>	<i>' statement terminator</i>

Note that `end_flag` would be parsed as a single identifier, rather than as the keyword `end` followed by the identifier `_flag`.

## LITERALS

Literals are tokens representing fixed numeric or character values.

The data type of a constant is deduced by the compiler using such clues as numeric value and the format used in the source code.

### Integer Literals

Integral values can be represented in decimal, hexadecimal, or binary notation.

In decimal notation, numerals are represented as a sequence of digits (without commas, spaces, or dots), with optional prefix + or – operator to indicate the sign. Values default to positive (6258 is equivalent to +6258).

The dollar-sign prefix (\$) or the prefix 0x indicates a hexadecimal numeral (for example, \$8F or 0x8F).

The percent-sign prefix (%) indicates a binary numeral (for example, %0101).

The allowed range of values is imposed by the largest data type in mikroBasic – `longint`. Compiler will report an error if the literal exceeds 2147483647 (\$7FFFFFFF).

### Floating Point Literals

A floating-point value consists of:

- Decimal integer
- Decimal point
- Decimal fraction
- e or E and a signed integer exponent (optional)

Negative floating constants are taken as positive constants with the unary operator minus (–) prefixed.

mikroBasic limits floating-point constants to range  
 $\pm 1.17549435082\text{E}38 \dots \pm 6.80564774407\text{E}38$ .

Here are some examples:

```
0.           ' = 0.0
-1.23        ' = -1.23
23.45e6       ' = 23.45 * 10^6
2e-5          ' = 2.0 * 10^-5
3E+10         ' = 3.0 * 10^10
.09E34        ' = 0.09 * 10^34
```

## Character Literals

Character literal is one character from the extended ASCII character set, enclosed by quotes (for example, "A"). Character literal can be assigned to variables of byte and char type (variable of byte will be assigned the ASCII value of the character). Also, you can assign character literal to a string variable.

## String Literals

String literal is a sequence of up to 255 characters from the extended ASCII character set, enclosed by quotes. Whitespace is preserved in string literals, i.e. parser does not “go into” strings but treats them as single tokens.

Length of string literal is the number of characters it consists of. String is stored internally as the given sequence of characters plus a final null character (ASCII zero). This appended “stamp” does not count against string’s total length. String literal with nothing in between the quotes (*null string*) is stored as a single null character. You can assign string literal to a string variable or to an array of char.

Here are several string literals:

```
"Hello world!"   ' message, 12 chars long
"  "             ' two spaces, 2 chars long
"C"              ' letter, 1 char long
""              ' null string, 0 chars long
```

Quote itself cannot be a part of the string literal, i.e. there is no escape sequence.

## KEYWORDS

Keywords are words reserved for special purposes and must not be used as normal identifier names.

Beside standard BASIC keywords, all relevant SFR are defined as global variables and represent reserved words that cannot be redefined (for example: TMR0, PCL, etc). Probe the Code Assistant for specific letters (CTRL+SPACE in Editor) or refer to Predefined Globals and Constants.

Here is the alphabetical listing of keywords in mikroBasic:

<b>absolute</b>	<b>float</b>	<b>or</b>
<b>abs</b>	<b>for</b>	<b>org</b>
<b>and</b>	<b>function</b>	<b>print</b>
<b>array</b>	<b>goto</b>	<b>procedure</b>
<b>asm</b>	<b>gosub</b>	<b>program</b>
<b>begin</b>	<b>if</b>	<b>read</b>
<b>boolean</b>	<b>include</b>	<b>select</b>
<b>case</b>	<b>in</b>	<b>sub</b>
<b>char</b>	<b>int</b>	<b>step</b>
<b>chr</b>	<b>integer</b>	<b>string</b>
<b>clear</b>	<b>interrupt</b>	<b>switch</b>
<b>const</b>	<b>is</b>	<b>then</b>
<b>dim</b>	<b>loop</b>	<b>to</b>
<b>div</b>	<b>label</b>	<b>until</b>
<b>do</b>	<b>mod</b>	<b>wend</b>
<b>double</b>	<b>module</b>	<b>while</b>
<b>else</b>	<b>new</b>	<b>with</b>
<b>end</b>	<b>next</b>	<b>xor</b>
<b>exit</b>	<b>not</b>	

Also, mikroBasic includes a number of predefined identifiers used in libraries. You could replace these by your own definitions, if you plan to develop your own libraries. For more information, see mikroBasic Libraries.

## IDENTIFIERS

Identifiers are arbitrary names of any length given to functions, variables, symbolic constants, user-defined data types, and labels. All these program elements will be referred to as objects throughout the help (not to be confused with the meaning of object in object-oriented programming).

Identifiers can contain the letters a to z and A to Z, the underscore character '\_', and the digits 0 to 9. The only restriction is that the first character must be a letter or an underscore.

### Case Sensitivity

BASIC is not case sensitive, so Sum, sum, and suM represent an equivalent identifier.

### Uniqueness and Scope

Although identifier names are arbitrary (within the rules stated), errors result if the same name is used for more than one identifier within the same scope and sharing the same name space. Duplicate names are legal for different name spaces regardless of scope rules. For more information on scope, refer to Scope and Visibility.

### Identifier Examples

Here are some valid identifiers:

```
temperature_V1  
Pressure  
no_hit  
dat2string  
SUM3  
_vtext
```

## PUNCTUATORS

The mikroBasic punctuators (also known as separators) include brackets, parentheses, comma, colon, and dot.

### Brackets

Brackets [ ] indicate single and multidimensional array subscripts:

```
dim alphabet as byte[30]
' ...
alphabet[2] = "c"
```

For more information, refer to Arrays.

### Parentheses

Parentheses ( ) are used to group expressions, isolate conditional expressions, and indicate function calls and function declarations:

```
d = c * (a + b)           ' Override normal precedence
if (d = z) then ...       ' Useful with conditional statements
func()                   ' Function call, no args
sub function func2(dim n as word) ' Function declaration
```

For more information, refer to Operators Precedence and Associativity, Expressions, or Functions and Procedures.

### Comma

The comma (,) separates the arguments in routine calls:

```
Lcd_Out(1, 1, txt)
```

Further, the comma separates identifiers in declarations:

```
dim i, j, k as word
```



The comma also separates elements in initialization lists of constant arrays:

```
const MONTHS as byte[12] = (31,28,31,30,31,30,31,31,30,31,30,31)
```

## Colon

Colon (:) is used to indicate a labeled statement:

```
start:  nop
      ...
goto start
```

For more information, refer to Labels.

## Dot

Dot (.) indicates access to a structure member. For example:

```
person.surname = "Smith"
```

For more information, refer to Structures.

Dot is a necessary part of floating point literals. Also, dot can be used for accessing individual bits of registers in mikroBasic.

## PROGRAM ORGANIZATION

mikroBasic imposes strict program organization. Below you can find models for writing legible and organized source files. For more information on file inclusion and scope, refer to Modules and to Scope and Visibility.

### Organization of Main Module

Basically, main source file has two sections: declaration and program body. Declarations should be in their proper place in the code, organized in an orderly manner. Otherwise, compiler may not be able to comprehend the program correctly.

When writing code, follow the model presented in the following page.

### Organization of Other Modules

Units other than main start with the keyword `module`; implementation section starts with the keyword `implements`. Follow the models presented in the following two pages.

Main unit should look like this:

```

program <program name>
include <include other modules>

'*****
'* Declarations (globals):
'*****

' symbols declarations
symbol ...

' constants declarations
const ...

' variables declarations
dim ...

' procedures declarations
sub procedure procedure_name(...)
    <local declarations>
    ...
end sub

' functions declarations
sub function function_name(...)
    <local declarations>
    ...
end sub

'*****
'* Program body:
'*****

main:
    ' write your code here
end.

```

Other units should look like this:

```

module <module name>
include <include other modules>

' *****
' * Interface (globals):
' *****

' symbols declarations
symbol ...

' constants declarations
const ...

' variables declarations
dim ...

' procedures prototypes
sub procedure procedure_name(...)

' functions prototypes
sub function function_name(...)

' *****
' * Implementation:
' *****

implements

' constants declarations
const ...

' variables declarations
dim ...

' procedures declarations
sub procedure procedure_name(...)
    <local declarations>
    ...
end sub

' functions declarations
sub function function_name(...)
    <local declarations>
    ...
end sub

end.

```

## SCOPE AND VISIBILITY

### Scope

The scope of identifier is the part of the program in which the identifier can be used to access its object. There are different categories of scope which depend on how and where identifiers are declared:

If identifier is declared in the declaration section of a main module, out of any function or procedure, scope extends from the point where it is declared to the end of the current file, including all routines enclosed within that scope. These identifiers have a file scope, and are referred to as *globals*.

If identifier is declared in the function or procedure, scope extends from the point where it is declared to the end of the current routine. These identifiers are referred to as *locals*.

If identifier is declared in the interface section of a module, scope extends the interface section of a module from the point where it is declared to the end of the module, and to any other module or program that uses that module. The only exception are symbols which have scope limited to the file in which they are declared.

If identifier is declared in the implementation section of a module, but not within any function or procedure, scope extends from the point where it is declared to the end of the module. The identifier is available to any function or procedure in the module.

### Visibility

The visibility of an identifier is that region of the program source code from which legal access can be made to the identifier's associated object.

Scope and visibility usually coincide, though there are circumstances under which an object becomes temporarily hidden by the appearance of a duplicate identifier: the object still exists but the original identifier cannot be used to access it until the scope of the duplicate identifier is ended.

Technically, visibility cannot exceed scope, but scope *can* exceed visibility.

## MODULES

In mikroBasic, each project consists of a single project file, and one or more module files. Project file, with extension `.pbp` contains information about the project, while modules, with extension `.pbas`, contain the actual source code.

Modules allow you to:

- break large programs into encapsulated modules that can be edited separately,
- create libraries that can be used in different projects,
- distribute libraries to other developers without disclosing the source code.

Each module is stored in its own file and compiled separately; compiled modules are linked to create an application. To build a project, the compiler needs either a source file or a compiled module file for each module.

### Include Clause

mikroBasic includes modules by means of `include` clause. It consists of the reserved word `include`, followed by a quoted module name. Extension of the file should not be included.

You can include one file per `include` clause. There can be any number of `include` clauses in each source file, but they all must be stated immediately after the program (or module) name.

Here's an example:

```
program MyProgram

include "utils"
include "strings"
include "MyUnit"
...
```

Given a module name, compiler will check for the presence of `.mcl` and `.pbas` files, in order specified by the search paths.

- If both `.pbas` and `.mcl` files are found, compiler will check their dates and include the newer one in the project. If the `.pbas` file is newer than the `.mcl`, new library will be written over the old one;
- If only `.pbas` file is found, compiler will create the `.mcl` file and include it in the project;
- If only `.mcl` file is present, i.e. no source code is available, compiler will include it as found;
- If none found, compiler will issue a “File not found” warning.

## Main Module

Every project in mikroBasic requires single main module file. Main module is identified by the keyword `program` at the beginning; it instructs the compiler where to “start”.

After you have successfully created an empty project with Project Wizard, Code Editor will display a new main module. It contains the bare-bones of a program:

```
program MyProject

' main procedure
main:
' Place program code here
end.
```

Other than comments, nothing should precede the keyword `program`. After the program name, you can optionally place the `include` clauses.

Place all global declarations (constants, variables, labels, routines) before the label `main`.

**Note:** In mikroBasic, the `end.` statement (the closing statement of every program) acts as an endless loop.

## Other Modules

Modules other than main start with the keyword `module`. Newly created blank module contains the bare-bones:

```
module MyModule  
  
implements  
  
end.
```

Other than comments, nothing should precede the keyword `module`. After the module name, you can optionally place the `include` clause.

## Interface Section

Part of the module above the keyword `implements` is referred to as interface section. Here, you can place global declarations (constants, variables, and labels) for the project.

You do not define routines in the interface section. Instead, state the prototypes of routines (from implementation section) that you want to be visible outside the module. Prototypes must match the declarations exactly.

## Implementation Section

Implementation section hides all the irrelevant innards from other modules, allowing encapsulation of code.

Everything declared below the keyword `implements` is *private*, i.e. has its scope limited to the file. When you declare an identifier in the implementation section of a module, you cannot use it outside the module, but you can use it in any block or routine defined within the module.

By placing the prototype in the interface section of the module (above the `implements`) you can make the routine *public*, i.e. visible outside of module. Prototypes must match the declarations exactly.



## VARIABLES

Variable is object whose value can be changed during the runtime. Every variable is declared under unique name which must be a valid identifier. This name is used for accessing the memory location occupied by the variable.

Variables are declared in the declaration part of the file or routine — each variable needs to be declared before it can be used. Global variables (those that do not belong to any enclosing block) are declared below the `include` statement, above the label `main`.

Specifying a data type for each variable is mandatory. mikroBasic syntax for variable declaration is:

```
dim identifier_list as type
```

Here, *identifier\_list* is a comma-delimited list of valid identifiers, and *type* can be any data type.

For more details refer to Types and Types Conversions. See also Scope and Visibility.

Here are a few examples of variable declarations:

```
dim i, j, k as byte  
dim counter, temp as word
```

### Variables and PIC

Every declared variable consumes part of RAM memory. Data type of variable determines not only the allowed range of values, but also the space variable occupies in RAM memory. Bear in mind that operations using different types of variables take different time to be completed. mikroBasic recycles local variable memory space – local variables declared in different functions and procedures share same memory space, if possible.

There is no need to declare SFR explicitly, as mikroBasic automatically declares relevant registers as global variables of `byte`. For example: `TOIE`, `INTF`, etc.

## CONSTANTS

Constant is data whose value cannot be changed during the runtime. Using a constant in a program consumes no RAM memory. Constants can be used in any expression, but cannot be assigned a new value.

Constants are declared in the declaration part of program or routine. You can declare any number of constants after the keyword `const`:

```
const constant_name [as type] = value
```

Every constant is declared under unique *constant\_name* which must be a valid identifier. It is a tradition to write constant names in uppercase. Constant requires you to specify *value*, which is a literal appropriate for the given type. The *type* is optional; in the absence of *type*, compiler assumes the “smallest” of the types that can accommodate *value*.

**Note:** You cannot omit type if declaring a constant array.

Here are a few examples:

```
const MAX as longint = 10000
const MIN = 1000           ' compiler will assume word type
const SWITCH = "n"         ' compiler will assume char type
const MSG = "Hello"        ' compiler will assume string type
const MONTHS as byte[12] = (31,28,31,30,31,30,31,31,30,31,30,31)
```

## **LABELS**

Labels serve as targets for `goto` and `gosub` statements. Mark the desired statement with label and a colon like this:

```
label_identifier : statement
```

No special declaration of label is necessary in mikroBasic.

Name of the label needs to be a valid identifier. The labeled statement, and `goto`/`gosub` statement must belong to the same block. Hence it is not possible to jump into or out of a procedure or a function. Do not mark more than one statement in a block with the same label.

Note: Label `main` marks the entry point of a program and must be present in the main module of every project. See Program Organization for more information.

Here is an example of an infinite loop that calls the procedure `Beep` repeatedly:

```
loop: Beep  
goto loop
```

## SYMBOLS

BASIC symbols allow you to create simple macros without parameters. You can replace any one line of code with a single identifier alias. Symbols, when properly used, can increase code legibility and reusability.

Symbols need to be declared at the very beginning of the module, right after the module name and the (optional) `include` clauses. Check Program Organization for more details. Scope of a symbol is always limited to the file in which it has been declared.

Symbol is declared as:

```
symbol alias = code
```

Here, *alias* must be a valid identifier which you will be using throughout the code. This identifier has file scope. The *code* can be any one line of code (literals, assignments, function calls, etc).

Using a symbol in a program consumes no RAM memory – compiler simply replaces each instance of a symbol with the appropriate line of code from the declaration.

Here are a few examples:

```
symbol MAXALLOWED = 216      ' Symbol as alias for numeric value
symbol PORT = PORTC          ' Symbol as alias for SFR
symbol MYDELAY = Delay_ms(1000) ' Symbol as alias for proc. call

dim cnt as byte      ' Some variable

' ...
main:

if cnt > MAXALLOWED then
    cnt = 0
    PORT.1 = 0
    MYDELAY
end if
```

**Note:** Symbols do not support macro expansion in the way C preprocessor does.

## FUNCTIONS AND PROCEDURES

Functions and procedures, collectively referred to as *routines*, are subprograms (self-contained statement blocks) which perform a certain task based on a number of input parameters. Function returns a value when executed, and procedure does not.

mikroBasic does not support inline routines.

### Functions

Function is declared like this:

```
sub function function_name(parameter_list) as return_type
    [ local declarations ]
    function body
end sub
```

The *function\_name* represents a function's name and can be any valid identifier. The *return\_type* is the type of return value and can be any simple type. Within parentheses, *parameter\_list* is a formal parameter list similar to variable declaration. In mikroBasic, parameters are always passed to function by value; to pass argument by the address, add the keyword *byref* ahead of identifier.

*Local declarations* are optional declarations of variables and/or constants, local for the given function. *Function body* is a sequence of statements to be executed upon calling the function.

A function is called by its name, with actual arguments placed in the same sequence as their matching formal parameters. The compiler is able to coerce mismatching arguments to the proper type according to implicit conversion rules. Upon function call, all formal parameters are created as local objects initialized by values of actual arguments. Upon return from a function, temporary object is created in the place of the call, and it is initialized by the expression of *return* statement. This means that function call as an operand in complex expression is treated as the function result.

Use the variable *result* (automatically created local) to assign the return value of a function.

Function calls are considered to be primary expressions, and can be used in situations where expression is expected. Function call can also be a self-contained statement, in which case the return value is discarded.

Here's a simple function which calculates  $x^n$  based on input parameters  $x$  and  $n$  ( $n > 0$ ):

```
sub function power(dim x, n as byte) as longint
dim i as byte
i = 0
result = 1
if n > 0 then
for i = 1 to n
result = result*x
next i
end if
end sub
```

Now we could call it to calculate, say,  $3^{12}$ :

```
tmp = power(3, 12)
```

## Procedures

Procedure is declared like this:

```
sub procedure procedure_name(parameter_list)
[ local declarations ]
procedure body
end sub
```

The *procedure\_name* represents a procedure's name and can be any valid identifier. Within parentheses, *parameter\_list* is a formal parameter list similar to variable declaration. In mikroBasic, parameters are always passed to procedure by value; to pass argument by the address, add the keyword *byref* ahead of identifier.

*Local declarations* are optional declaration of variables and/or constants, local for the given procedure. *Procedure body* is a sequence of statements to be executed upon calling the procedure.

A procedure is called by its name, with actual arguments placed in the same sequence as their matching formal parameters. The compiler is able to coerce mismatching arguments to the proper type according to implicit conversion rules. Upon procedure call, all formal parameters are created as local objects initialized by values of actual arguments.

Procedure call is a self-contained statement.

Here's an example procedure which transforms its input time parameters, preparing them for output on LCD:

```
sub procedure time_prep(dim byref sec, min, hr as byte)
    sec = ((sec and $F0) >> 4)*10 + (sec and $0F)
    min = ((min and $F0) >> 4)*10 + (min and $0F)
    hr   = ((hr   and $F0) >> 4)*10 + (hr   and $0F)
end sub
```

## TYPES

BASIC is a strictly typed language, which means that every variable and constant need to have a strictly defined type, known at the time of compilation.

The type serves:

- to determine the correct memory allocation required,
- to interpret the bit patterns found in the object during subsequent accesses,
- in many type-checking situations, to ensure that illegal assignments are trapped.

mikroBasic supports many standard (predefined) and user-defined data types, including signed and unsigned integers of various sizes, arrays, strings, pointers, and structures.

### Type Categories

Types can be divided into:

- simple types
- arrays
- strings
- pointers
- structures (user defined types)



## SIMPLE TYPES

Simple types represent types that cannot be divided into more basic elements, and are the model for representing elementary data on machine level.

Here is an overview of simple types in mikroBasic:

Type	Size	Range
byte	8-bit	0 .. 255
char*	8-bit	0 .. 255
word	16-bit	0 .. 65535
short	8-bit	- 128 .. 127
integer	16-bit	-32768 .. 32767
longint	32-bit	-2147483648 .. 2147483647
float	32-bit	$\pm 1.17549435082 \cdot 10^{-38} \dots$ $\pm 6.80564774407 \cdot 10^{38}$

\* char type can be treated as byte type in every aspect

You can assign signed to unsigned or vice versa only using the explicit conversion. Refer to Types Conversions for more information.

## ARRAYS

An array represents an indexed collection of elements of the same type (called the base type). Because each element has a unique index, arrays, unlike sets, can meaningfully contain the same value more than once.

Array types are denoted by constructions of the form:

```
type[array_length]
```

Each of the elements of an array is numbered from 0 through the *array\_length* - 1. Every element of an array is of *type* and can be accessed by specifying array name followed by element's index within brackets.

Here are a few examples of array declaration:

```
dim weekdays as byte[7]
dim samples as word[50]

begin
  ' Now we can access elements of array variables, for example:
  samples[0] = 1
  if samples[37] = 0 then
    ...
```

### Constant Arrays

Constant array is initialized by assigning it a comma-delimited sequence of values within parentheses. For example:

```
' Declare a constant array which holds no. of days in each month:
const MONTHS as byte[12] = (31,28,31,30,31,30,31,31,30,31,30,31)
```

Note that indexing is zero based; in the previous example, number of days in January is MONTHS[0], and number of days in December is MONTHS[11].

The number of assigned values must not exceed the specified length. Vice versa is possible, when the trailing “excess” elements will be assigned zeroes.

For more information on arrays of char, refer to Strings.

## MULTI-DIMENSIONAL ARRAYS

An array is one-dimensional if it is of scalar type. One-dimensional arrays are sometimes referred to as vectors.

Multidimensional arrays are constructed by declaring arrays of array type. These arrays are stored in memory in such way that the right most subscript changes fastest, i.e. arrays are stored “in rows”. Here is a sample 2-dimensional array:

```
dim m as byte[50][20]    '2-dimensional array of size 50x20
```

Variable m is an array of 50 elements, which in turn are arrays of 20 bytes each. Thus, we have a matrix of 50x20 elements: first element is m[0][0], last one is m[49][19]. First element of the 5th row would be m[0][5].

If you are not initializing the array in the declaration, you can omit the first dimension of multi-dimensional array. In that case, array is located elsewhere, e.g. in another file. This is a commonly used technique when passing arrays as function parameters:

```
sub procedure example(dim byref m as byte[50][20])
    ' we can omit first dimension
    ...
    inc(m[1][1])
end sub

dim m as byte[50][20]    '2-dimensional array of size 50x20
dim n as byte[4][2][7]    '3-dimensional array of size 4x2x7
main:
    ...
    func(m)
end.
```

## STRINGS

A string represents a sequence of characters, and is an equivalent to an array of `char`. It is declared like:

```
string[string_length]
```

Specifier *string\_length* is the number of characters string consists of. String is stored internally as the given sequence of characters plus a final null character (zero). This appended “stamp” does not count against string’s total length.

A null string (" ") is stored as a single null character.

You can assign string literals or other strings to string variables. String on the right side of an assignment operator has to be the shorter of the two, or of equal length. For example:

```
dim msg1 as string[20]
dim msg2 as string[19]

begin
    msg1 = "This is some message"
    msg2 = "Yet another message"
    msg1 = msg2 ' this is ok, but vice versa would be illegal
```

Alternately, you can handle strings element-by-element. For example:

```
dim s as string[5]
...
s = "mik"
' s[0] is char literal "m"
' s[1] is char literal "i"
' s[2] is char literal "k"
' s[3] is zero
' s[4] is undefined
' s[5] is undefined
```

Be careful when handling strings in this way, since overwriting the end of a string can cause access violations.

## POINTERS

A pointer is a data type which holds a memory address. While a variable accesses that memory address directly, a pointer can be thought of as a reference to that memory address.

To declare a pointer data type, add a carat prefix (^) before type. For example, if you are creating a pointer to an `integer`, you would write:

```
^integer
```

To access the data at the pointer's memory location, you add a carat after the variable name. For example, let's declare variable `p` which points to `integer`, and then assign the pointed memory location value 5:

```
dim p as ^integer  
...  
p^ = 5
```

A pointer can be assigned to another pointer. However, note that only the address, not the value, is copied. Once you modify the data located at one pointer, the other pointer, when dereferenced, also yields modified data.

### @ Operator

The @ operator returns the address of a variable or routine; that is, @ constructs a pointer to its operand. The following rules apply to @:

- If `X` is a variable, @`X` returns the address of `X`.
- If `F` is a routine (a function or procedure), @`F` returns `F`'s entry point (result is of `longint`).

## STRUCTURES

A structure represents a heterogeneous set of elements. Each element is called a member; the declaration of a structure type specifies a name and type for each member. The syntax of a structure type declaration is

```
structure structname  
    dim member1 as type1  
    ...  
    dim membern as typen  
end structure
```

where *structname* is a valid identifier, each *type* denotes a type, and each member is a valid identifier. The scope of a member identifier is limited to the structure in which it occurs, so you don't have to worry about naming conflicts between member identifiers and other variables.

For example, the following declaration creates a structure type called `Dot`:

```
structure Dot  
    dim x as float  
    dim y as float  
end structure
```

Each `Dot` contains two members: `x` and `y` coordinates; memory is allocated when you instantiate the structure, like this:

```
dim m as Dot  
dim n as Dot
```

This variable declaration creates two instances of `Dot`, called `m` and `n`.

A member can be of previously defined structure type. For example:

```
' Structure defining a circle:  
structure Circle  
    dim radius as real  
    dim center as Dot  
end structure
```

## Structure Member Access

You can access the members of a structure by means of dot (.). If we had declared variables `circle1` and `circle2` of previously defined type `Circle`:

```
dim circle1, circle2 as Circle
```

we could access their individual members like this:

```
circle1.radius = 3.7  
circle1.center.x = 0  
circle1.center.y = 0
```

You can also commit assignments between complex variables, if they are of the same type:

```
circle2 = circle1  ' This will copy values of all members
```

## TYPES CONVERSIONS

Conversion of object of one type is changing it to the same object of another type (i.e. applying another type to a given object). mikroBasic supports both implicit and explicit conversions for built-in types.

### Implicit Conversion

You cannot mix signed and unsigned objects in expressions with arithmetic or logical operators. You can assign signed to unsigned or vice versa only using the explicit conversion.

Compiler will provide an automatic implicit conversion in the following situations:

- statement requires an expression of particular type (according to language definition), and we use an expression of different type,
- operator requires an operand of particular type, and we use an operand of different type,
- function requires a formal parameter of particular type, and we pass it an object of different type,
- result does not match the declared function return type.

### Promotion

When operands are of different types, implicit conversion promotes the less complex to more complex type taking the following steps:

byte/char	->	word
short	->	integer
short	->	longint
integer	->	longint
integral	->	float

Higher bytes of extended unsigned operand are filled with zeroes. Higher bytes of extended signed operand are filled with bit sign (if number is negative, fill higher bytes with one, otherwise with zeroes).



## Clipping

In assignments, and statements that require an expression of particular type, destination will store the correct value only if it can properly represent the result of expression (that is, if the result fits in destination range).

If expression evaluates to more complex type than expected, excess data will be simply clipped (higher bytes are lost).

```
dim i as byte
dim j as word
...
j = $FF0F
i = j ' i becomes $0F, higher byte $FF is lost
```

## Explicit Conversion

Explicit conversion can be executed at any point by inserting type keyword (byte, word, short, integer, or longint) ahead of the expression to be converted. The expression must be enclosed in parentheses. Explicit conversion can be performed only on the operand left of the assignment operator.

Special case is conversion between signed and unsigned types. Explicit conversion between signed and unsigned data does not change binary representation of data; it merely allows copying of source to destination.

For example:

```
dim a as byte
dim b as short
...
b = -1
a = byte(b) ' a is 255, not 1

' This is because binary representation remains
' 11111111; it's just interpreted differently now
```

You cannot execute explicit conversion on the operand left of the assignment operator.

## Arithmetic Conversions

When you use an arithmetic expression, such as  $a + b$ , where  $a$  and  $b$  are of different arithmetic types, mikroBasic performs implicit type conversions before the expression is evaluated. These standard conversions include promotions of “lower” types to “higher” types in the interests of accuracy and consistency.

Assigning a signed character object (such as a variable) to an integral object results in automatic sign extension. Objects of type short always use sign extension; objects of type byte always set the high byte to zero when converted to int.

Converting a longer integral type to a shorter type truncates the higher order bits and leaves low-order bits unchanged. Converting a shorter integral type to a longer type either sign-extends or zero-fills the extra bits of the new value, depending on whether the shorter type is signed or unsigned, respectively.

**Note:** Conversion of floating point data into integral value (in assignments or via explicit typecast) produces correct results only if the float value does not exceed the scope of destination integral type.

### In details:

Here are the steps mikroBasic uses to convert the operands in an arithmetic expression:

First, any small integral types are converted according to the following rules:

byte converts to integer

short converts to integer, with the same value

short converts to integer, with the same value, sign-extended

byte converts to integer, with the same value, zero-filled

The result of the expression is the same type as that of the two operands.

Here are several examples of implicit conversion:

$2 + 3.1 \quad ' \rightarrow 2. + 3.1 \rightarrow 5.1$

$5 / 4 * 3. \quad ' \rightarrow (5/4)*3. \rightarrow 1*3. \rightarrow 1.*3. \rightarrow 3.$

$3. * 5 / 4 \quad ' \rightarrow (3.*5)/4 \rightarrow (3.*5.)/4 \rightarrow 15./4 \rightarrow 15./4. \rightarrow 3.75$

## OPERATORS

Operators are tokens that trigger some computation when applied to variables and other objects in an expression.

There are four types of operators in mikroBasic:

- Arithmetic Operators
- Bitwise Operators
- Boolean Operators
- Relational Operators

### Operators Precedence and Associativity

There are 4 precedence categories in mikroBasic. Operators in the same category have equal precedence with each other.

Each category has an associativity rule: left-to-right, or right-to-left. In the absence of parentheses, these rules resolve the grouping of expressions with operators of equal precedence.

Precedence	Operands	Operators	Associativity
4	1	@ not + -	right-to-left
3	2	* / div mod and << >>	left-to-right
2	2	+ - or xor	left-to-right
1	2	= <> < > <= >=	left-to-right

## Arithmetic Operators

Arithmetic operators are used to perform mathematical computations. They have numerical operands and return numerical results. As `char` operators are technically `bytes`, they can be also used as unsigned operands in arithmetic operations. Operands need to be either both signed or both unsigned.

All arithmetic operators associate from left to right.

Operator	Operation	Precedence
+	addition	2
-	subtraction	2
*	multiplication	3
/	division	3
<code>div</code>	division, rounds down to nearest integer	3
<code>mod</code>	returns the remainder of integer division (cannot be used with floating points)	3

Operator `-` can be used as a prefix unary operator to change sign of a signed value. Unary prefix operator `+` can be used, but it doesn't affect the data.

For example: `b = -a`

### Division by Zero

If 0 (zero) is used explicitly as the second operand (i.e. `x div 0`), compiler will report an error and will not generate code. But in case of implicit division by zero: `x div y`, where `y` is 0 (zero), result will be the maximum value for the appropriate type (for example, if `x` and `y` are words, the result will be `$FFFF`).

## Relational Operators

Use relational operators to test equality or inequality of expressions. All relational operators return TRUE or FALSE.

All relational operators associate from left to right.

Operator	Operation	Precedence
=	equal	1
<>	not equal	1
>	greater than	1
<	less than	1
>=	greater than or equal	1
<=	less than or equal	1

## Relational Operators in Expressions

Precedence of arithmetic and relational operators was designated in such a way to allow complex expressions without parentheses to have expected meaning:

$a + 5 \geq c - 1.0 / e$  ' ->  $(a + 5) \geq (c - (1.0 / e))$

## Bitwise Operators

Use the bitwise operators to modify the individual bits of numerical operands. Operands need to be either both signed or both unsigned.

Bitwise operators associate from left to right. The only exception is the bitwise complement operator not which associates from right to left.

Operator	Operation	Precedence
<code>and</code>	bitwise AND; returns 1 if both bits are 1, otherwise returns 0	3
<code>or</code>	bitwise (inclusive) OR; returns 1 if either or both bits are 1, otherwise returns 0	2
<code>xor</code>	bitwise exclusive OR (XOR); returns 1 if the bits are complementary, otherwise 0	2
<code>not</code>	bitwise complement (unary); inverts each bit	4
<code>&lt;&lt;</code>	bitwise shift left; moves the bits to the left, see below	3
<code>&gt;&gt;</code>	bitwise shift right; moves the bits to the right, see below	3

Bitwise operators `and`, `or`, and `xor` perform logical operations on appropriate pairs of bits of their operands. Operator `not` complements each bit of its operand. For example:

```
$1234 and $5678           ' equals $1230
'
' because ..
'
' $1234 : 0001 0010 0011 0100
' $5678 : 0101 0110 0111 1000
' -----
'  and  : 0001 0010 0011 0000
'
' .. that is, $1230
```

Similarly:

```
$1234 or  $5678      ' equals $567C
$1234 xor $5678      ' equals $444C
not $1234           ' equals $EDCB
```

## Unsigned and Conversions

If number is converted from less complex to more complex data type, upper bytes are filled with zeroes. If number is converted from more complex to less complex data type, data is simply truncated (upper bytes are lost).

For example:

```
dim a as byte
dim b as word
...
a = $AA
b = $F0F0
b = b and a
' a is extended with zeroes; b becomes $00A0
```

## Signed and Conversions

If number is converted from less complex data type to more complex, upper bytes are filled with ones if sign bit is 1 (number is negative); upper bytes are filled with zeroes if sign bit is 0 (number is positive). If number is converted from more complex data type to less complex, data is simply truncated (upper bytes are lost).

For example:

```
dim a as byte
dim b as word
...
a = -12
b = $70FF
b = b and a

' a is sign extended, upper byte is $FF;
' b becomes $70F4
```

## Bitwise Shift Operators

Binary operators << and >> move the bits of the left operand for a number of positions specified by the right operand, to the left or right, respectively. Right operand has to be positive and less than 255.

With shift left (<<), left most bits are discarded, and “new” bits on the right are assigned zeroes. Thus, shifting unsigned operand to left by  $n$  positions is equivalent to multiplying it by  $2^n$  if all the discarded bits are zero. This is also true for signed operands if all the discarded bits are equal to sign bit.

With shift right (>>), right most bits are discarded, and the “freed” bits on the left are assigned zeroes (in case of unsigned operand) or the value of the sign bit (in case of signed operand). Shifting operand to right by  $n$  positions is equivalent to dividing it by  $2^n$ .

For example, if you need to extract the higher byte, you can do it like this:

```
PORTB = word(temp >> 8)
```



## EXPRESSIONS

An expression is a sequence of operators, operands, and punctuators that returns a value.

The primary expressions include: literals, variables, and function calls. From these, using operators, more complex expressions can be created. Formally, expressions are defined recursively: subexpressions can be nested up to the limits of memory.

Expressions are evaluated according to certain conversion, grouping, associativity, and precedence rules that depend on the operators used, the presence of parentheses, and the data types of the operands. The precedence and associativity of the operators are summarized in Operator Precedence and Associativity. The way operands and subexpressions are grouped does not necessarily specify the actual order in which they are evaluated by mikroBasic.

You cannot mix signed and unsigned data types in assignment expressions or in expressions with arithmetic or logical operators. You can use explicit conversion though.

## STATEMENTS

Statements define algorithmic actions within a program. Each statement needs to be terminated by a newline character (CR/LF).

The simplest statements include assignments, routine calls, and jump statements. These can be combined to form loops, branches, and other structured statements. In the absence of specific jump and selection statements, statements are executed sequentially in the order of appearance in the source code.

Statements can be roughly divided into:

- `asm` Statement
- Assignment Statements
- Conditional Statements
- Iteration Statements (Loops)
- Jump Statements

### **asm Statement**

mikroBasic allows embedding assembly in the source code by means of `asm` statement. Note that you cannot use numerals as absolute addresses for register variables in assembly instructions. You may use symbolic names instead (listing will display these names as well as addresses).

You can group assembly instructions with the `asm` keyword:

```
asm
    block of assembly instructions
end asm
```

BASIC comments are not allowed in embedded assembly code. Instead, you may use one-line assembly comments starting with semicolon. If you plan to use a certain BASIC variable in embedded assembly only, be sure to at least initialize it (assign it initial value) in BASIC code; otherwise, linker will issue an error. This does not apply to predefined globals such as `PORTB`.

**Note:** mikroBasic will not check if the banks are set appropriately for your variable. You need to set the banks manually in assembly code.

## Migration from v2.xx to v4.xx

The syntax that is being used in the asm blocks is somewhat different than it has been in version 2. The differences are:

For example, for variable named :

`_myVar`, if it is global.

`FARG_+XX`, if it is local (this is `myVar`'s actual position in the local function frame).

`_myVar_L0(+XX)`, if it is a local static variable (+XX to access further individual bytes).

The only types whose name remains the same in asm as it is in Basic are constants, e.g. `INTCON`, `PORTB`, `WREG`, `GIE`, etc.

Accessing individual bytes is different as well. For example, if you have a global variable "`g_var`", that is of type long (i.e. 4 bytes), you are to access it like this:

```
MOVFB  _g_var+0, 0    ;puts least-significant byte of g_var in W register
MOVFB  _g_var+1, 0    ;second byte of _g_var; corresponds to Hi(g_var)
MOVFB  _g_var+2, 0    ;Higher(g_var)
MOVFB  _g_var+3, 0    ;Highest(g_var)
... etc.
```

Syntax for retrieving address of an object is different. For objects located in flash ROM:

```
MOVLW  #_g_var        ;first byte of address
MOVLW  @#_g_var        ;second byte of address
MOVLW  @@#_g_var       ;third byte of address
... and so on.
```

For objects located in RAM:

```
MOVLW  CONST1          ;first byte of address
MOVLW  @CONST1          ;second byte of address
... and so on.
```

## Assignment Statements

Assignment statements have the form:

```
variable = expression
```

The statement evaluates the *expression* and assigns its value to the *variable*. All rules of the implicit conversion apply. *Variable* can be any declared variable or array element, and *expression* can be any expression.

Do not confuse the assignment with relational operator = which tests for equality. mikroBasic will interpret meaning of the character = from the context.

## Conditional Statements

Conditional or selection statements select from alternative courses of action by testing certain values. There are two types of selection statements in mikroBasic: *if* and *select case*.

### If Statement

Use *if* to implement a conditional statement. Syntax of *if* statement has the form:

```
if expression then  
    statements  
[else  
    other statements  
end if
```

When *expression* evaluates to true, *statements* execute. If *expression* is false, *other statements* execute. The *expression* must convert to a boolean type; otherwise, the condition is ill-formed. The *else* keyword with an alternate block of statements (*other statements*) is optional.

Nested *if* statements require additional attention. General rule is that the nested conditionals are parsed starting from the innermost conditional, with each *else* bound to the nearest available *if* on its left.

## Select Case Statement

Use the `select case` statement to pass control to a specific program branch, based on a certain condition. The `select case` statement consists of a selector expression (a condition) and a list of possible values. Syntax of `select case` statement is:

```
select case selector
  case value_1
    statements_1
  ...
  case value_n
    statements_n
  [case else
    default_statements]
end select
```

The *selector* is an expression which should evaluate as integral value. The *values* can be literals, constants, or expressions. The *statements* can be any statements. The `else` clause is optional.

First, the *selector* expression (condition) is evaluated. The `select case` statement then compares it against all the available *values*. If the match is found, the *statements* following the match evaluate, and `select case` statement terminates. In case there are multiple matches, the first matching *statement* will be executed. If none of the *values* matches the *selector*, then the *default\_statements* in the `else` clause (if there is one) are executed.

Here is a simple example of `select case` statement:

```
select case operator
  case "*"
    res = n1 * n2
  case "/"
    res = n1 / n2
  case "+"
    res = n1 + n2
  case "-"
    res = n1 - n2
  case else
    res = 0
    Inc(cnt)
end select
```

Also, you can group *values* together for a match. Simply separate the items by commas:

```
select case reg
  case 0
    opmode = 0
  case 1,2,3,4
    opmode = 1
  case 5,6,7
    opmode = 2
end select
```

### Nested Case Statements

Note that `select case` statements can be nested – values are then assigned to the innermost enclosing `select case` statement.

## Iteration Statements (Loops)

Iteration statements let you loop a set of statements. There are three forms of iteration statements in mikroBasic: `for`, `while`, and `do`.

You can use the statements `break` and `continue` to control the flow of a loop statement. The `break` terminates the statement in which it occurs, while `continue` begins executing the next iteration of the sequence.

### For Statement

The `for` statement implements an iterative loop and requires you to specify the number of iterations. Syntax of `for` statement is:

```
for counter = initial_value to final_value [step step_value]
    statements
next counter
```

The *counter* is a variable which increases by *step\_value* with each iteration of the loop. Parameter *step\_value* is an optional integral value, and defaults to 1 if omitted. Before the first iteration, *counter* is set to the *initial\_value* and will increment until it reaches (or exceeds) the *final\_value*.

The *initial\_value* and *final\_value* should be expressions compatible with the *counter*; *statements* can be any statements that do not change the value of *counter*.

Note that parameter *step\_value* may be negative, allowing you to create a countdown.

Here is an example of calculating scalar product of two vectors, *a* and *b*, of length *n*, using `for` statement:

```
s = 0
for i = 0 to n
    s = s + a[i] * b[i]
next i
```

The `for` statement results in an endless loop if the *final\_value* equals or exceeds the range of *counter*'s type.

## While Statement

Use the `while` keyword to conditionally iterate a statement. Syntax of `while` statement is:

```
while expression
    statements
wend
```

The *statements* are executed repeatedly as long as the *expression* evaluates true. The test takes place before the *statements* are executed. Thus, if *expression* evaluates false on the first pass, the loop does not execute.

Here is an example of calculating scalar product of two vectors, using the `while` statement:

```
while i < n
    s = s + a[i] * b[i]
    i = i + 1
wend
```

## Do Statement

The `do` statement executes until the condition becomes true. Syntax of `do` statement is:

```
do
    statements
loop until expression
```

The *statements* are executed repeatedly until the *expression* evaluates true. The *expression* is evaluated *after* each iteration, so the loop will execute *statements* at least once.

Here is an example of calculating scalar product of two vectors, using the `do` statement:

```
do
    s = s + a[i] * b[i]
    i = i + 1
loop until i = n
```



## Jump Statements

A jump statement, when executed, transfers control unconditionally. There are four such statements in mikroBasic: `break`, `continue`, `goto`, and `gosub`.

### Break Statement

Sometimes, you might need to stop the loop from within its body. Use the `break` statement within loops to pass control to the first statement following the innermost loop (`for`, `while`, and `do`).

For example:

```
' Wait for CF card to be plugged; refresh every second
while true
  Lcd_Out(1,1,"No card inserted")
  if Cf_Detect() = 1 then
    break
  end if
  Delay_ms(1000)
wend

' Now we can work with CF card ...
Lcd_Out(1,1,"Card detected  ")
```

### Continue Statement

You can use the `continue` statement within loops to “skip the cycle”:

- `continue` statement in `for` loop moves program counter to the line with keyword `for`; it does not change the loop counter,
- `continue` statement in `while` loop moves program counter to the line with loop condition (top of the loop),
- `continue` statement in `do` loop moves program counter to the line with loop condition (bottom of the loop).

## Goto Statement

Use the `goto` statement to unconditionally jump to a local label — for more information, refer to Labels. Syntax of `goto` statement is:

```
goto label_name
```

This will transfer control to the location of a local label specified by `label_name`. The `goto` line can come before or after the label. It is not possible to jump into or out of routine.

You can use `goto` to break out from any level of nested control structures. Never jump into a loop or other structured statement, since this can have unpredictable effects. Use of `goto` statement is generally discouraged as practically every algorithm can be realized without it, resulting in legible structured programs. One possible application of `goto` statement is breaking out from deeply nested control structures.

## Gosub Statement

Use the `gosub` statement to unconditionally jump to a local label — for more information, refer to Labels. Syntax of `gosub` statement is:

```
gosub label_name  
...  
label_name:  
...  
return
```

This will transfer control to the location of a local label specified by `label_name`. Also, the calling point is remembered. Upon encountering a `return` statement, program execution will continue with the next statement (line) after the `gosub`. The `gosub` line can come before or after the label.

It is not possible to jump into or out of routine by means of `gosub`. Never jump into a loop or other structured statement, since this can have unpredictable effects.

**Note:** Like with `goto`, use of `gosub` statement is generally discouraged. mikroBasic supports `gosub` only for the sake of backward compatibility. It is better to rely on functions and procedures, creating legible structured programs.

## Exit Statement

The `exit` statement allows you to break out of a routine (function or procedure). It passes the control to the first statement following the routine call.

Here is a simple example:

```
sub procedure Proc1()  
dim error as byte  
    ... ' we're doing something here  
    if error = TRUE then  
        exit  
    end if  
    ... ' some code, which won't be executed if error is true  
end sub
```

**Note:** If breaking out of a function, return value will be the value of the local variable `result` at the moment of `exit`.

## COMPILER DIRECTIVES

Any line in source code with a leading # is taken as a compiler directive. The initial # can be preceded or followed by whitespace (excluding new lines). Compiler directives are not case sensitive.

You can use conditional compilation to select particular sections of code to compile while excluding other sections. All compiler directives must be completed in the source file in which they begun.

### Directives #DEFINE and #UNDEFINE

Use directive #DEFINE to define a conditional compiler constant (“flag”). You can use any identifier for a flag, with no limitations. No conflicts with program identifiers are possible, as flags have a separate name space. Only one flag can be set per directive.

For example:

```
#DEFINE extended_format
```

Use #UNDEFINE to undefine (“clear”) previously defined flag.

### Directives #IF..THEN..#ELSE

Conditional compilation is carried out by #IFDEF..THEN directive. The #IFDEF tests whether a flag is currently defined or not; that is, whether a previous #DEFINE directive has been processed for that flag and is still in force.

Directive `#IFDEF . . THEN` is terminated by the `#ENDIF` directive, and can have any number of `#ELSEIF` clauses and an optional `#ELSE` clause:

```
#IFDEF flag THEN
    block of code
...
[#ELSE
    alternate block of code ]
#endif
```

First, `#IFDEF` checks if *flag* is set by means of `#DEFINE`. If so, only *block of code* will be compiled. Otherwise, compiler will check flags *flag\_1 .. flag\_n*, and execute the appropriate *block of code i*. Eventually, if none of the *flags* is set, *alternate block of code* in the `#ELSE` (if present) will be compiled.

The `#ENDIF` ends the conditional sequence. The result of the preceding scenario is that only one section of code (possibly empty) is passed on for further processing. The processed section can contain further conditional clauses, nested to any depth; each `#IFDEF` must be matched with a closing `#ENDIF`.

Here is a simple example:

```
' Uncomment the appropriate flag for your application:
'#DEFINE resolution8

#ifdef resolution8 THEN
    ... ' code specific to 8-bit resolution
#else
    ... ' default code
#endif
```

`#I` is compiler directive for inserting content of given file into place where this directive is called.

```
#I filename.txt
```

## Predefined Flags

mikroBasic has several predefined flags for configuring hardware. These can be found in definition files (“def” folder), specifying hardware settings for individual chips. SFR are sorted under categories: `___SFR` (umbrella for all registers), `___CONFIG_OSC` (oscillator), `___CONFIG_WDT` (Watchdog timer), and `___CONFIG_BORPOR` (brown-out reset and power-on-timer).



---

# mikroBasic Libraries

---

mikroBasic provides a number of built-in and library routines which help you develop your application faster and easier. Libraries for ADC, CAN, USART, SPI, I2C, 1-Wire, LCD, PWM, RS485, numeric formatting, bit manipulation, and many other are included along with practical, ready-to-use code examples.

## BUILT-IN ROUTINES

mikroBasic compiler provides a set of useful built-in utility functions. Built-in routines can be used in any part of the project.

Currently, mikroBasic includes the following built-in functions:

- Inc
- Dec
- Chr
- Ord
- SetBit
- ClearBit
- TestBit
- Lo
- Hi
- Higher
- Highest
- Swap
- Clock\_Khz
- Clock\_Mhz
- Reset
- ClrWdt



## Inc

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function Inc(dim byref par as longint) as longint</b>
<b>Description</b>	Increases parameter <code>par</code> by 1. Note that the function may be called as a self-contained statement. Function returns the value of increased parameter. This is an “inline” routine; code is generated in the place of the call, so the call doesn’t count against the nested call limit.

## Dec

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function Dec(dim byref par as longint) as longint</b>
<b>Description</b>	Decreases parameter <code>par</code> by 1. Note that the function may be called as a self-contained statement. Function returns the value of decreased parameter. This is an “inline” routine; code is generated in the place of the call, so the call doesn’t count against the nested call limit.

## Chr

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function Chr(dim code as byte) as char</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns a character associated with the specified character code.
<b>Description</b>	Function returns a character associated with the specified character <code>code</code> . Numbers from 0 to 31 are the standard nonprintable ASCII codes. This is an “inline” routine; code is generated in the place of the call, so the call doesn’t count against the nested call limit.
<b>Example</b>	<code>c = Chr(10)</code> ' returns a linefeed character

## Ord

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Ord( <b>dim</b> character <b>as</b> char) <b>as</b> byte
<b>Returns</b>	ASCII code of the character.
<b>Description</b>	Function returns ASCII code of the character. This is an “inline” routine; code is generated in the place of the call, so the call doesn’t count against the nested call limit.
<b>Example</b>	c = Ord("A")    ' returns 65

## SetBit

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> SetBit( <b>dim byref</b> register <b>as</b> byte, <b>dim</b> rbit <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Function sets the bit rbit of register. Parameter rbit needs to be a variable or literal with value 0..7. See Predefined globals and constants for more information on register identifiers. This is an “inline” routine; code is generated in the place of the call, so the call doesn’t count against the nested call limit.
<b>Example</b>	SetBit(PORTB, 2)    ' Set RB2

## ClearBit

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> ClearBit( <b>dim byref</b> register <b>as</b> byte, <b>dim</b> rbit <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Function clears the bit rbit of register. Parameter rbit needs to be a variable or literal with value 0..7. See Predefined globals and constants for more information on register identifiers. This is an “inline” routine; code is generated in the place of the call, so the call doesn’t count against the nested call limit.
<b>Example</b>	ClearBit(PORTC, 7)    ' Clear RC7

## TestBit

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> TestBit( <b>dim</b> register, rbit <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	If bit is set, returns 1, otherwise returns 0.
<b>Description</b>	Function tests if the bit rbit of register is set. If set, function returns 1, otherwise returns 0. Parameter rbit needs to be a variable or literal with value 0..7. See Predefined globals and constants for more information on register identifiers. This is an “inline” routine; code is generated in the place of the call, so the call doesn’t count against the nested call limit.
<b>Example</b>	flag = TestBit(PORTE, 2) <i>' 1 if RE2 is set, otherwise 0</i>

## Lo

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Lo( <b>dim</b> number <b>as byte..longint</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns the lowest 8 bits (byte) of number, bits 0..7.
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the lowest byte of number. Function does not interpret bit patterns of number – it merely returns 8 bits as found in register.
<b>Example</b>	= Lo(0x1AC30F4) <i>' Equals 0xF4</i>

## Hi

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Hi( <b>dim</b> number <b>as word..longint</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns byte next to the lowest byte of number, bits 8..15.
<b>Description</b>	Function returns byte next to the lowest byte of number. Function does not interpret bit patterns of number – it merely returns 8 bits as found in register.
<b>Example</b>	a = Hi(0x1AC30F4) <i>' Equals 0x30</i>

## Higher

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Higher( <b>dim</b> number <b>as longint</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns byte next to the highest byte of number, bits 16..23.
<b>Description</b>	Function returns byte next to the highest byte of number. Function does not interpret bit patterns of number – it merely returns 8 bits as found in register.
<b>Example</b>	a = Higher(0x1AC30F4)    ' Equals 0xAC

## Highest

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Highest( <b>dim</b> number <b>as longint</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns the highest byte of number, bits 24..31.
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the highest byte of number. Function does not interpret bit patterns of number – it merely returns 8 bits as found in register.
<b>Example</b>	a = Highest(0x1AC30F4)    ' Equals 0x01

## Swap

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Swap( <b>dim byref</b> arg <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns byte consisting of swapped nibbles.
<b>Description</b>	Swaps higher nibble (bits <7..4>) and lower nibble (bits <3..0>) of arg.
<b>Example</b>	PORTB = 0xF0 PORTA = Swap(PORTB)    ' PORTA = PORTB = 0x0F

## Clock\_Khz

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Clock_Khz <b>as word</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Device clock in KHz.
<b>Description</b>	Returns device clock in KHz, rounded to the nearest integer.
<b>Example</b>	clk := Clock_Khz()

## Clock\_Mhz

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Clock_Mhz <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Device clock in MHz.
<b>Description</b>	Returns device clock in MHz, rounded to the nearest integer.
<b>Example</b>	clk := Clock_Mhz()

## Reset

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Reset
<b>Description</b>	This procedure is equal to assembler instruction <b>reset</b> . This procedure works only for P18.
<b>Example</b>	Reset <i>'Resets the PIC MCU'</i>

## ClrWdt

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> ClrWdt
<b>Description</b>	This procedure is equal to assembler instruction <b>clrwtd</b> .
<b>Example</b>	ClrWdt <i>'Clears PIC's WDT'</i>

## LIBRARY ROUTINES

mikroBasic provides a set of libraries which simplifies the initialization and use of PIC MCU and its modules. Library functions do not require any header files to be included; you can use them anywhere in your projects.

Currently available libraries include:

- ADC Library
- CAN Library
- CANSPI Library
- Compact Flash Library
- EEPROM Library
- Ethernet Library
- Flash Memory Library
- I2C Library
- Keypad Library
- LCD Library
- LCD8 Library
- Graphic LCD Library
- Manchester Code Library
- Multi Media Card Library
- OneWire Library
- PS/2 Library
- PWM Library
- RS-485 Library
- Secure Digital Library
- Software I2C Library
- Software SPI Library
- Software UART Library
- Sound Library
- SPI Library
- USART Library
- USB HID Library
- Util Library
  
- Conversions Library
- Delays Library
- Math Library
- String Library

## ADC Library

ADC (Analog to Digital Converter) module is available with a number of PIC MCU models. Library function `ADC_Read` is included to provide you comfortable work with the module.

### Adc\_Read

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> <code>Adc_Read(dim channel as byte) as word</code>
<b>Returns</b>	10-bit unsigned value read from the specified ADC channel.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Initializes PIC's internal ADC module to work with RC clock. Clock determines the time period necessary for performing AD conversion (min 12TAD). RC sources typically have <math>T_{ad}</math> 4uS.</p> <p>Parameter <code>channel</code> represents the channel from which the analog value is to be acquired. For channel-to-pin mapping please refer to documentation for the appropriate PIC MCU.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	<p>PIC MCU with built-in ADC module. You should consult the Datasheet documentation for specific device (most devices from PIC16/18 families have it).</p> <p>Before using the function, be sure to configure the appropriate TRISA bits to designate the pins as input. Also, configure the desired pin as analog input, and set <math>V_{ref}</math> (voltage reference value).</p>
<b>Example</b>	<code>tmp = Adc_Read(1) ' Read analog value from channel 1</code>

## Library Example

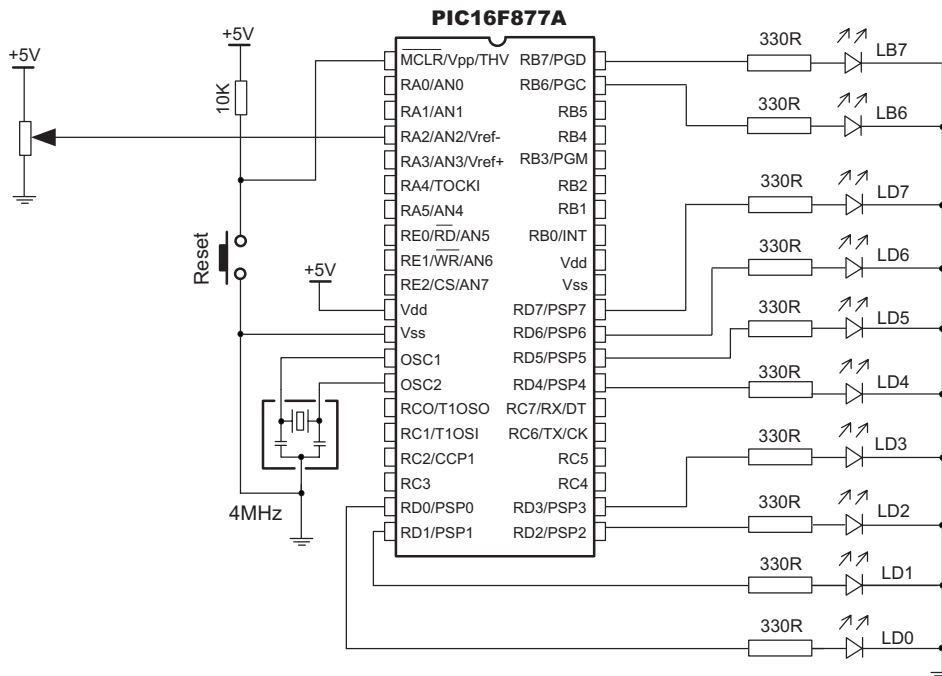
This code snippet reads analog value from channel 2 and displays it on PORTD (lower 8 bits) and PORTB (2 most significant bits).

```
program Adc_Test
dim temp_res as word

main:
    ADCON1 = $80           ' Configure analog inputs and Vref
    TRISA  = $FF           ' PORTA is input
    TRISB  = $3F           ' Pins RB7 and RB6 are output
    TRISD  = $0            ' PORTD is output

    while TRUE
        temp_res = Adc_Read(2)
        PORTD = temp_res    ' Send lower 8 bits to PORTD
        PORTB = word(temp_res >> 2) ' Send 2 most significant bits to PORTB
    wend
end.
```

## Hardware Connection





## CAN Library

mikroBasic provides a library (driver) for working with the CAN module.

CAN is a very robust protocol that has error detection and signalling, self-checking and fault confinement. Faulty CAN data and remote frames are re-transmitted automatically, similar to the Ethernet.

Data transfer rates vary from up to 1 Mbit/s at network lengths below 40m to 250 Kbit/s at 250m cables, and can go even lower at greater network distances, down to 200Kbit/s, which is the minimum bitrate defined by the standard. Cables used are shielded twisted pairs, and maximum cable length is 1000m.

CAN supports two message formats:

Standard format, with 11 identifier bits, and  
Extended format, with 29 identifier bits

**Note:** CAN routines are currently supported only by P18XXX8 PICmicros.  
Microcontroller must be connected to CAN transceiver (MCP2551 or similar)  
which is connected to CAN bus.

**Note:** Be sure to check CAN constants necessary for using some of the functions.  
See page 99.

## Library Routines

CANSetOperationMode  
CANGetOperationMode  
CANInitialize  
CANSetBaudRate  
CANSetMask  
CANSetFilter  
CANRead  
CANWrite

Following routines are for the internal use by compiler only:

RegsToCANID  
CANIDToRegs

## CANSetOperationMode

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> CANSetOperationMode( <b>dim</b> mode, wait_flag <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	<p>Sets CAN to requested mode, i.e. copies mode to CANSTAT. Parameter mode needs to be one of CAN_OP_MODE constants (see CAN constants).</p> <p>Parameter wait_flag needs to be either 0 or \$FF:  If set to \$FF, this is a blocking call – the function won't "return" until the requested mode is set. If 0, this is a non-blocking call. It does not verify if CAN module is switched to requested mode or not. Caller must use function CANGetOperationMode to verify correct operation mode before performing mode specific operation.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	CAN routines are currently supported only by P18XXX8 PICmicros. Microcontroller must be connected to CAN transceiver (MCP2551 or similar) which is connected to CAN bus.
<b>Example</b>	CANSetOperationMode(CAN_MODE_CONFIG, \$FF)

## CANGetOperationMode

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> CANGetOperationMode <b>as</b> byte
<b>Returns</b>	Current opmode.
<b>Description</b>	Function returns current operational mode of CAN module.
<b>Requires</b>	CAN routines are currently supported only by P18XXX8 PICmicros. Microcontroller must be connected to CAN transceiver (MCP2551 or similar) which is connected to CAN bus.
<b>Example</b>	<b>if</b> CANGetOperationMode = CAN_MODE_NORMAL <b>then</b> ...

## CANInitialize

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> CANInitialize( <b>dim</b> SJW, BRP, PHSEG1, PHSEG2, PROPSEG, CAN_CONFIG_FLAGS <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Initializes CAN. All pending transmissions are aborted. Sets all mask registers to 0 to allow all messages.</p> <p>Filter registers are set according to flag value:</p> <pre> if (CAN_CONFIG_FLAGS and CAN_CONFIG_VALID_XTD_MSG) &lt;&gt; 0   ' Set all filters to XTD_MSG else if (config and CONFIG_VALID_STD_MSG) &lt;&gt; 0   ' Set all filters to STD_MSG else   ' Set half of the filters to STD, and the rest to XTD_MSG. </pre> <p>Parameters:</p> <p>SJW as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–4)  BRP as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–64)  PHSEG1 as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–8)  PHSEG2 as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–8)  PROPSEG as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–8)  CAN_CONFIG_FLAGS is formed from predefined constants (see CAN constants).</p>
<b>Requires</b>	CAN must be in Config mode; otherwise the function will be ignored.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> init = CAN_CONFIG_SAMPLE_THRICE    <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_PHSEG2_PRG_ON     <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_STD_MSG           <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_DBL_BUFFER_ON     <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_VALID_XTD_MSG     <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_LINE_FILTER_OFF ... CANInitialize(1, 1, 3, 3, 1, init)  ' Initialize CAN </pre>

## CANSetBaudRate

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> CANSetBaudRate( <b>dim</b> SJW, BRP, PHSEG1, PHSEG2, PROPSEG, CAN_CONFIG_FLAGS <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Sets CAN baud rate. Due to complexity of CAN protocol, you cannot simply force a bps value. Instead, use this function when CAN is in Config mode. Refer to datasheet for details.</p> <p>Parameters:</p> <p>SJW as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–4)  BRP as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–64)  PHSEG1 as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–8)  PHSEG2 as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–8)  PROPSEG as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–8)  CAN_CONFIG_FLAGS is formed from predefined constants (see CAN constants)</p>
<b>Requires</b>	CAN must be in Config mode; otherwise the function will be ignored.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> init = CAN_CONFIG_SAMPLE_THRICE    <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_PHSEG2_PRG_ON     <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_STD_MSG            <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_DBL_BUFFER_ON     <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_VALID_XTD_MSG     <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_LINE_FILTER_OFF ... CANSetBaudRate(1, 1, 3, 3, 1, init) </pre>

## CANSetMask

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> CANSetMask( <b>dim</b> CAN_MASK <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim</b> value <b>as longint</b> , <b>dim</b> CAN_CONFIG_FLAGS <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Function sets mask for advanced filtering of messages. Given value is bit adjusted to appropriate buffer mask registers.</p> <p>Parameters: CAN_MASK is one of predefined constant values (see CAN constants); value is the mask register value; CAN_CONFIG_FLAGS selects type of message to filter, either CAN_CONFIG_XTD_MSG or CAN_CONFIG_STD_MSG.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	CAN must be in Config mode; otherwise the function will be ignored.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>' Set all mask bits to 1, i.e. all filtered bits are relevant: CANSetMask(CAN_MASK_B1, -1, CAN_CONFIG_XTD_MSG)  ' Note that -1 is just a cheaper way to write \$FFFFFFFF. ' Complement will do the trick and fill it up with ones.</pre>

## CANSetFilter

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> CANSetFilter( <b>dim</b> CAN_FILTER <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim</b> value <b>as longint</b> , <b>dim</b> CAN_CONFIG_FLAGS <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Function sets mask for advanced filtering of messages. Given value is bit adjusted to appropriate buffer mask registers.</p> <p>Parameters: CAN_MASK is one of predefined constant values (see CAN constants); value is the filter register value; CAN_CONFIG_FLAGS selects type of message to filter, either CAN_CONFIG_XTD_MSG or CAN_CONFIG_STD_MSG.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	CAN must be in Config mode; otherwise the function will be ignored.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>' Set id of filter B1_F1 to 3: CANSetFilter(CAN_FILTER_B1_F1, 3, CAN_CONFIG_XTD_MSG)</pre>

## CANRead

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> CANRead( <b>dim byref</b> id <b>as longint</b> , <b>dim byref</b> data <b>as byte</b> [8], <b>dim byref</b> datalen, CAN_RX_MSG_FLAGS <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Message from receive buffer or zero if no message found.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Function reads message from receive buffer. If at least one full receive buffer is found, it is extracted and returned. If none found, function returns zero.</p> <p>Parameters: id is message identifier; data is an array of bytes up to 8 bytes in length; datalen is data length, from 1–8; CAN_RX_MSG_FLAGS is value formed from constants (see CAN constants).</p>
<b>Requires</b>	CAN must be in mode in which receiving is possible.
<b>Example</b>	rcv = CANRead(id, data, len, 0)

## CANWrite

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> CANWrite( <b>dim</b> id <b>as longint</b> , <b>dim byref</b> data <b>as byte</b> [8], <b>dim</b> datalen, CAN_TX_MSG_FLAGS <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns zero if message cannot be queued (buffer full).
<b>Description</b>	<p>If at least one empty transmit buffer is found, function sends message on queue for transmission. If buffer is full, function returns 0.</p> <p>Parameters: id is CAN message identifier. Only 11 or 29 bits may be used depending on message type (standard or extended); data is array of bytes up to 8 bytes in length; datalen is data length from 1–8; CAN_TX_MSG_FLAGS is value formed from constants (see CAN constants).</p>
<b>Requires</b>	CAN must be in Normal mode.
<b>Example</b>	tx = CAN_TX_PRIORITY_0 <b>and</b> CAN_TX_XTD_FRAME CANWrite(id, data, 2, tx)

## CAN Constants

There is a number of constants predefined in CAN library. To be able to use the library effectively, you need to be familiar with these. You might want to check the example at the end of the chapter.

### CAN\_OP\_MODE

CAN\_OP\_MODE constants define CAN operation mode. Function CANSetOperationMode expects one of these as its argument:

```
const CAN_MODE_BITS           = $E0      ' Use it to access mode bits
const CAN_MODE_NORMAL        = 0
const CAN_MODE_SLEEP         = $20
const CAN_MODE_LOOP          = $40
const CAN_MODE_LISTEN        = $60
const CAN_MODE_CONFIG        = $80
```

### CAN\_CONFIG\_FLAGS

CAN\_CONFIG\_FLAGS constants define flags related to CAN module configuration. Functions CANInitialize and CANSetBaudRate expect one of these (or a bitwise combination) as their argument:

```
const CAN_CONFIG_DEFAULT      = $FF      ' 11111111

const CAN_CONFIG_PHSEG2_PRG_BIT = $01
const CAN_CONFIG_PHSEG2_PRG_ON  = $FF      ' XXXXXXX1
const CAN_CONFIG_PHSEG2_PRG_OFF = $FE      ' XXXXXXX0

const CAN_CONFIG_LINE_FILTER_BIT = $02
const CAN_CONFIG_LINE_FILTER_ON  = $FF      ' XXXXXX1X
const CAN_CONFIG_LINE_FILTER_OFF = $FD      ' XXXXXX0X

const CAN_CONFIG_SAMPLE_BIT     = $04
const CAN_CONFIG_SAMPLE_ONCE    = $FF      ' XXXXX1XX
const CAN_CONFIG_SAMPLE_THRICE   = $FB      ' XXXXX0XX

const CAN_CONFIG_MSG_TYPE_BIT   = $08
const CAN_CONFIG_STD_MSG        = $FF      ' XXXX1XXX
const CAN_CONFIG_XTD_MSG        = $F7      ' XXXX0XXX

' continues..
```

' ..continued

```

const CAN_CONFIG_DBL_BUFFER_BIT          = $10
const CAN_CONFIG_DBL_BUFFER_ON           = $FF   ' XXX1XXXX
const CAN_CONFIG_DBL_BUFFER_OFF          = $EF   ' XXX0XXXX

const CAN_CONFIG_MSG_BITS                 = $60
const CAN_CONFIG_ALL_MSG                  = $FF   ' X11XXXXX
const CAN_CONFIG_VALID_XTD_MSG            = $DF   ' X10XXXXX
const CAN_CONFIG_VALID_STD_MSG            = $BF   ' X01XXXXX
const CAN_CONFIG_ALL_VALID_MSG            = $9F   ' X00XXXXX

```

You may use bitwise AND to form config byte out of these values. For example:

```

init = CAN_CONFIG_SAMPLE_THRICE and CAN_CONFIG_PHSEG2_PRG_ON and
      CAN_CONFIG_STD_MSG         and CAN_CONFIG_DBL_BUFFER_ON and
      CAN_CONFIG_VALID_XTD_MSG   and CAN_CONFIG_LINE_FILTER_OFF
'...
CANInitialize(1, 1, 3, 3, 1, init)   ' initialize CAN

```

### **CAN\_TX\_MSG\_FLAGS**

CAN\_TX\_MSG\_FLAGS are flags related to transmission of a CAN message:

```

const CAN_TX_PRIORITY_BITS          = $03
const CAN_TX_PRIORITY_0              = $FC   ' XXXXXX00
const CAN_TX_PRIORITY_1              = $FD   ' XXXXXX01
const CAN_TX_PRIORITY_2              = $FE   ' XXXXXX10
const CAN_TX_PRIORITY_3              = $FF   ' XXXXXX11

const CAN_TX_FRAME_BIT               = $08
const CAN_TX_STD_FRAME                = $FF   ' XXXXXX1XX
const CAN_TX_XTD_FRAME                = $F7   ' XXXXXX0XX

const CAN_TX_RTR_BIT                 = $40
const CAN_TX_NO_RTR_FRAME             = $FF   ' X1XXXXXX
const CAN_TX_RTR_FRAME                = $BF   ' X0XXXXXX

```

You may use bitwise AND to adjust the appropriate flags. For example:

```

' form value to be used with CANSendMessage:
send_config = CAN_TX_PRIORITY_0 and CAN_TX_XTD_FRAME and
              CAN_TX_NO_RTR_FRAME
'...
CANSendMessage(id, data, 1, send_config)

```



## **CAN\_RX\_MSG\_FLAGS**

CAN\_RX\_MSG\_FLAGS are flags related to reception of CAN message. If a particular bit is set; corresponding meaning is TRUE or else it will be FALSE.

```

const CAN_RX_FILTER_BITS      = $07 ' Use it to access filter bits
const CAN_RX_FILTER_1         = $00
const CAN_RX_FILTER_2         = $01
const CAN_RX_FILTER_3         = $02
const CAN_RX_FILTER_4         = $03
const CAN_RX_FILTER_5         = $04
const CAN_RX_FILTER_6         = $05
const CAN_RX_OVERFLOW         = $08 ' Set if Overflowed; else clear
const CAN_RX_INVALID_MSG      = $10 ' Set if invalid; else clear
const CAN_RX_XTD_FRAME        = $20 ' Set if XTD msg; else clear
const CAN_RX_RTR_FRAME        = $40 ' Set if RTR msg; else clear
const CAN_RX_DBL_BUFFERED     = $80 ' Set if msg was
                                     '   hardware double-buffered
    
```

You may use bitwise AND to adjust the appropriate flags. For example:

```

if MsgFlag and CAN_RX_OVERFLOW = 0 then
    ... ' Receiver overflow has occurred; previous message is lost.
    
```

## **CAN\_MASK**

CAN\_MASK constants define mask codes. Function CANSetMask expects one of these as its argument:

```

const CAN_MASK_B1    = 0
const CAN_MASK_B2    = 1
    
```

## **CAN\_FILTER**

CAN\_FILTER constants define filter codes. Function CANSetFilter expects one of these as its argument:

```

const CAN_FILTER_B1_F1 = 0
const CAN_FILTER_B1_F2 = 1
const CAN_FILTER_B2_F1 = 2
const CAN_FILTER_B2_F2 = 3
const CAN_FILTER_B2_F3 = 4
const CAN_FILTER_B2_F4 = 5
    
```

## Library Example

The example demonstrates CAN protocol. It is a simple data exchange between 2 PIC's, where data is incremented upon each bounce. Data is printed on PORTC (lower byte) and PORTD (higher byte) for a visual check. Note that the data exchange doesn't start until you press a button; check the code below.

```

program can_test

dim aa, aa1, aa2, lenn, zr, cont, oldstate as byte
dim data as byte[8]
dim id as longint

sub function TestButton as byte
    result = true
    if Button(PORTB, 0, 1, 0) then
        oldstate = 255
    end if
    if oldstate and Button(PORTB, 0, 1, 1) then
        result = false
        oldstate = 0
    end if
end sub

main:
    TRISB.0 = 1    ' RB0 is input
    PORTC = 0
    TRISC = 0
    PORTD = 0
    TRISD = 0
    aa      = 0
    aa1     = 0
    aa2     = 0

    ' Form value to be used with CANSendMessage:
    aa1 = CAN_TX_PRIORITY_0      and
        CAN_TX_XTD_FRAME      and
        CAN_TX_NO_RTR_FRAME

    ' Form value to be used with CANInitialize:
    aa = CAN_CONFIG_SAMPLE_THRICE      and
        CAN_CONFIG_PHSEG2_PRG_ON      and
        CAN_CONFIG_STD_MSG             and
        CAN_CONFIG_DBL_BUFFER_ON       and
        CAN_CONFIG_VALID_XTD_MSG       and
        CAN_CONFIG_LINE_FILTER_OFF

    ' continues ..

```

```

' .. continued

cont = true
while cont
    cont = TestButton
wend

' Initialize CAN
CANInitialize( 1,1,3,3,1,aa)

' Set CONFIG mode
CANSetOperationMode(CAN_MODE_CONFIG,TRUE)
ID = -1

' Set all mask1 bits to ones
CANSetMask(CAN_MASK_B1,ID,CAN_CONFIG_XTD_MSG)

' Set all mask2 bits to ones
CANSetMask(CAN_MASK_B2,ID,CAN_CONFIG_XTD_MSG)

' Set id of filter B1_F1 to 3
CANSetFilter(CAN_FILTER_B1_F1,3,CAN_CONFIG_XTD_MSG)

' Set NORMAL mode
CANSetOperationMode(CAN_MODE_NORMAL,TRUE)

PORTD = $FF
id = 12111
CANWrite(id, data, 1, aa1)          ' Send message via CAN

while true
    oldstate = 0
    zr = CANRead(id, Data, lenn, aa2)
    if (id = 3) and zr then
        PORTD = $AA
        PORTC = data[0]          ' Print data at PORTC
        data[0] = data[0]+1
        id = 12111
        CANWrite(id, data, 1, aa1) ' Send incremented data back
        if lenn = 2 then          ' If message contains two data bytes,
            PORTD = data[1]      '   print second byte on at PORTD
        end if
    end if
wend

end.

```



## CANSPI Library

SPI module is available with a number of PICmicros. mikroBasic provides a library (driver) for working with the external CAN modules (such as MCP2515 or MCP2510) via SPI.

In mikroBasic, each routine of CAN library has its CANSPI counterpart with identical syntax. For more information on the Controller Area Network, consult the CAN Library. Note that the effective communication speed depends on the SPI, and is certainly slower than the “real” CAN.

**Note:** CANSPI functions are supported by any PIC MCU that has SPI interface on PORTC. Also, CS pin of MCP2510 or MCP2515 must be connected to RC0. Example of HW connection is given at the end of the chapter.

**Note:** Be sure to check CAN constants necessary for using some of the functions. See page 99.

## Library Routines

```
CANSPISetOperationMode
CANSPIGetOperationMode
CANSPIInitialize
CANSPISetBaudRate
CANSPISetMask
CANSPISetFilter
CANSPIRead
CANSPIWrite
```

Following routines are for the internal use by compiler only:

```
RegsToCANSPIID
CANSPIIDToRegs
```

## CANSPISetOperationMode

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> CANSPISetOperationMode( <b>dim mode</b> , wait_flag <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Sets CAN to requested mode, i.e. copies mode to CANSTAT. Parameter mode needs to be one of CAN_OP_MODE constants (see CAN constants, page 141).</p> <p>Parameter wait_flag needs to be either 0 or 0xFF: If set to 0xFF, this is a blocking call – the function won't "return" until the requested mode is set. If 0, this is a non-blocking call. It does not verify if CAN module is switched to requested mode or not. Caller must use function CANSPIGetOperationMode to verify correct operation mode before performing mode specific operation.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	CANSPI functions are supported by any PIC MCU that has SPI interface on PORTC. Also, CS pin of MCP2510 or MCP2515 must be connected to RC0.
<b>Example</b>	CANSPISetOperationMode(CAN_MODE_CONFIG, \$FF)

## CANSPIGetOperationMode

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> CANSPIGetOperationMode <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Current opmode.
<b>Description</b>	Function returns current operational mode of CAN module.
<b>Example</b>	<b>if</b> (CANSPIGetOperationMode = CAN_MODE_CONFIG) <b>then</b> ...

## CANSPIInitialize

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> CANSPIInitialize( <b>dim</b> SJW, BRP, PHSEG1, PHSEG2, PROPSEG, CAN_CONFIG_FLAGS <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Initializes CANSPI. All pending transmissions are aborted. Sets all mask registers to 0 to allow all messages.</p> <p>Filter registers are set according to flag value:</p> <pre> if ((CAN_CONFIG_FLAGS and CAN_CONFIG_VALID_XTD_MSG) = 0) then   ' Set all filters to XTD_MSG else if ((config and CONFIG_VALID_STD_MSG) = 0) then   ' Set all filters to STD_MSG else   ' Set half the filters to STD, and the rest to XTD_MSG </pre> <p>Parameters:</p> <p>SJW as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–4)  BRP as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–64)  PHSEG1 as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–8)  PHSEG2 as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–8)  PROPSEG as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–8)  CAN_CONFIG_FLAGS is formed from predefined constants (see CAN constants, page 99).</p>
<b>Requires</b>	CANSPI must be in Config mode; otherwise the function will be ignored.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> init = CAN_CONFIG_SAMPLE_THRICE    <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_PHSEG2_PRG_ON     <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_STD_MSG           <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_DBL_BUFFER_ON     <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_VALID_XTD_MSG     <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_LINE_FILTER_OFF ... CANSPIInitialize(1, 1, 3, 3, 1, init)    ' Initialize CANSPI </pre>

## CANSPISetBaudRate

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> CANSPISetBaudRate( <b>dim</b> SJW, BRP, PHSEG1, PHSEG2, PROPSEG, CAN_CONFIG_FLAGS <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Sets CANSPI baud rate. Due to complexity of CANSPI protocol, you cannot simply force a bps value. Instead, use this function when CANSPI is in Config mode. Refer to datasheet for details.</p> <p>Parameters:</p> <p>SJW as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–4)  BRP as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–64)  PHSEG1 as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–8)  PHSEG2 as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–8)  PROPSEG as defined in 18XXX8 datasheet (1–8)  CAN_CONFIG_FLAGS is formed from predefined constants (see CAN constants)</p>
<b>Requires</b>	CANSPI must be in Config mode; otherwise the function will be ignored.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> init = CAN_CONFIG_SAMPLE_THRICE    <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_PHSEG2_PRG_ON     <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_STD_MSG           <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_DBL_BUFFER_ON     <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_VALID_XTD_MSG     <b>and</b>       CAN_CONFIG_LINE_FILTER_OFF ... CANSPISetBaudRate(1, 1, 3, 3, 1, init) </pre>



## CANSPISetMask

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> CANSPISetMask( <b>dim</b> CAN_MASK <b>as</b> byte, <b>dim</b> value <b>as</b> longint, <b>dim</b> CAN_CONFIG_FLAGS <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	<p>Function sets mask for advanced filtering of messages. Given value is bit adjusted to appropriate buffer mask registers.</p> <p>Parameters: CAN_MASK is one of predefined constant values (see CAN constants); value is the mask register value; CAN_CONFIG_FLAGS selects type of message to filter, either CAN_CONFIG_XTD_MSG or CAN_CONFIG_STD_MSG.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	CANSPI must be in Config mode; otherwise the function will be ignored.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>' Set all mask bits to 1, i.e. all filtered bits are relevant: CANSPISetMask(CAN_MASK_B1, -1, CAN_CONFIG_XTD_MSG)  ' Note that -1 is just a cheaper way to write \$FFFFFFFF. ' Complement will do the trick and fill it up with ones</pre>

## CANSPISetFilter

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> CANSPISetFilter( <b>dim</b> CAN_FILTER <b>as</b> byte, <b>dim</b> val <b>as</b> longint, <b>dim</b> CAN_CONFIG_FLAGS <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	<p>Function sets mask for advanced filtering of messages. Given value is bit adjusted to appropriate buffer mask registers.</p> <p>Parameters: CAN_MASK is one of predefined constant values (see CAN constants); value is the filter register value; CAN_CONFIG_FLAGS selects type of message to filter, either CAN_CONFIG_XTD_MSG or CAN_CONFIG_STD_MSG.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	CANSPI must be in Config mode; otherwise the function will be ignored.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>' Set id of filter B1_F1 to 3: CANSPISetFilter(CAN_FILTER_B1_F1, 3, CAN_CONFIG_XTD_MSG)</pre>

## CANSPIRead

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> CANSPIRead( <b>dim byref</b> id <b>as longint</b> , <b>dim byref</b> data <b>as byte</b> [8], <b>dim byref</b> DataLen, CAN_RX_MSG_FLAGS <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Message from receive buffer or zero if no message found.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Function reads message from receive buffer. If at least one full receive buffer is found, it is extracted and returned. If none found, function returns zero.</p> <p>Parameters: id is message identifier; data is an array of bytes up to 8 bytes in length; datalen is data length, from 1–8; CAN_RX_MSG_FLAGS is value formed from constants (see CAN constants).</p>
<b>Requires</b>	CANSPI must be in mode in which receiving is possible.
<b>Example</b>	rcv = CANSPIRead(id, data, len, rx)

## CANSPIWrite

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> CANSPIWrite( <b>dim</b> id <b>as longint</b> , <b>dim byref</b> data <b>as byte</b> [8], <b>dim datalen</b> , CAN_TX_MSG_FLAGS <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns zero if message cannot be queued (buffer full).
<b>Description</b>	<p>If at least one empty transmit buffer is found, function sends message on queue for transmission. If buffer is full, function returns 0.</p> <p>Parameters: id is CANSPI message identifier. Only 11 or 29 bits may be used depending on message type (standard or extended); data is array of bytes up to 8 bytes in length; datalen is data length from 1–8; CAN_TX_MSG_FLAGS is value formed from constants (see CAN constants).</p>
<b>Requires</b>	CANSPI must be in Normal mode.
<b>Example</b>	tx = CAN_TX_PRIORITY_0 <b>and</b> CAN_TX_XTD_FRAME CANSPIWrite(id, data, 2, tx)

## Library Example

The example demonstrates CANSPI protocol. It is a simple data exchange between 2 PIC's, where data is incremented upon each bounce. Data is printed on PORTC (lower byte) and PORTD (higher byte) for a visual check.

```
program canspi_test

dim aa, aa1, aa2, lenn, zr as byte
dim data as byte[8]
dim id as longint

main:
    TRISB = 0
    SPI_init           ' Must be performed before any other activity
    TRISC.2 = 0        ' This pin is connected to Reset pin of MCP2510
    PORTC.2 = 0        ' Keep MCP2510 in reset state
    PORTC.0 = 1        ' Make sure that MCP2510 is not selected
    TRISC.0 = 0        ' RC0 is output
    PORTD = 0
    TRISD = 0          ' PORTD is output
    aa = 0
    aa1 = 0
    aa2 = 0

    ' Prepare flags for CANSPIinitialize
    aa = CAN_CONFIG_SAMPLE_THRICE and
        CAN_CONFIG_PHSEG2_PRG_ON and
        CAN_CONFIG_STD_MSG and
        CAN_CONFIG_DBL_BUFFER_ON and
        CAN_CONFIG_VALID_XTD_MSG

    ' Activate MCP2510 chip
    PORTC.2 = 1

    ' Prepare flags for CANSPIWrite
    aa1 = CAN_TX_PRIORITY_BITS and
        CAN_TX_FRAME_BIT and
        CAN_TX_RTR_BIT

    ' continues ..
```

```

' .. continued

' Initialize MCP2510
CANSPIInitialize(1,2,3,3,1,aa)

' Set Config mode
CANSPISetOperationMode(CAN_MODE_CONFIG,true)
ID = -1

' Set all mask1 bits to ones
CANSPISetMask(CAN_MASK_B1,id,CAN_CONFIG_XTD_MSG)

' Set all mask2 bits to ones
CANSPISetMask(CAN_MASK_B2,0,CAN_CONFIG_XTD_MSG)

' Set filter_b1_f1 id to 12111
CANSPISetFilter(CAN_FILTER_B1_F1,12111,CAN_CONFIG_XTD_MSG)

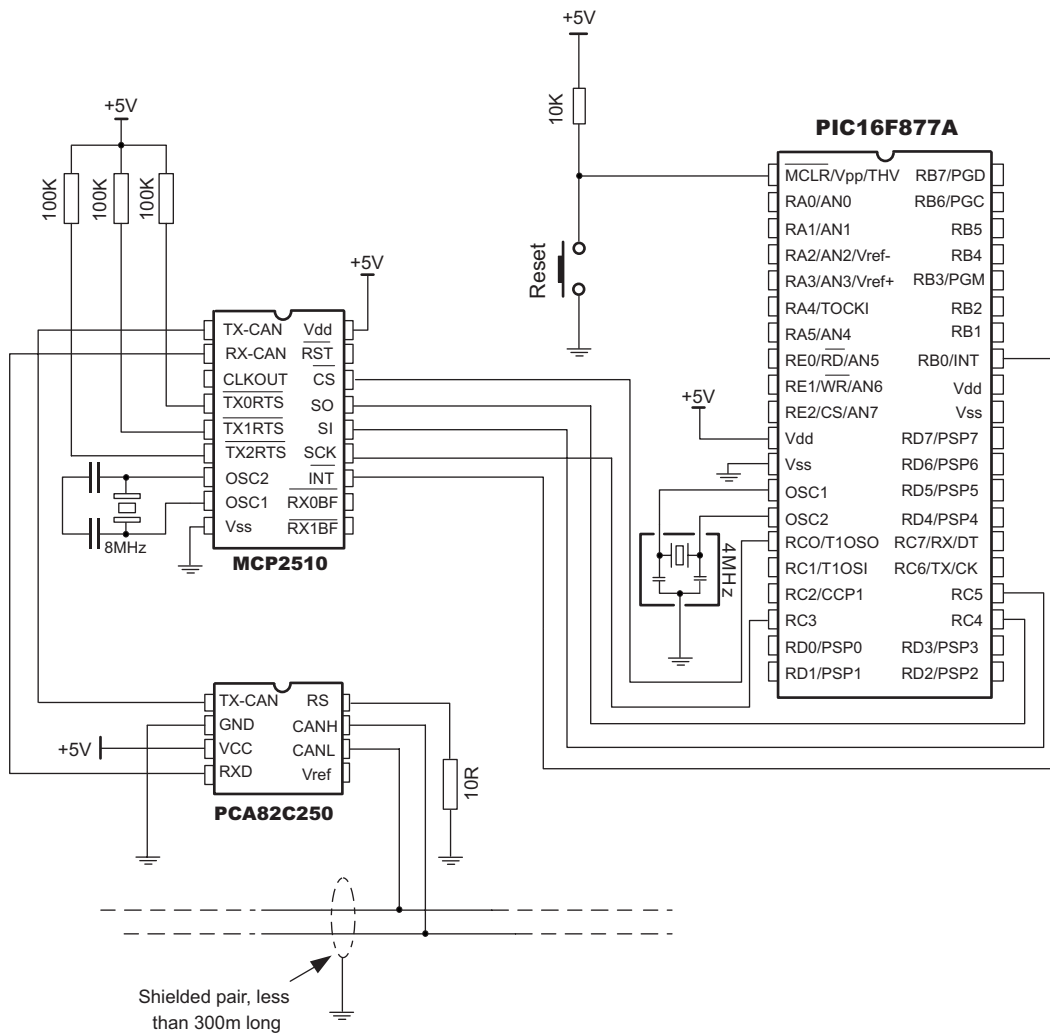
' Get back to Normal mode
CANSPISetOperationMode(CAN_MODE_NORMAL,true)

while true
  zr = CANSPIRead(id, Data, lenn, aa2)
  if (id = 12111) and zr then
    PORTD = $AA
    PORTB = data[0]
    Inc(data[0])
    id = 3
    Delay_ms(10)
    CANSPIWrite(id, data, 1, aa1)
    if lenn = 2 then
      PORTD = data[1]
    end if
  end if
wend

end.

```

## Hardware Connection



## Compact Flash Library

Compact Flash Library provides routines for accessing data on Compact Flash card (abbrev. CF further in text). CF cards are widely used memory elements, commonly found in digital cameras. Great capacity (8MB ~ 2GB, and more) and excellent access time of typically few microseconds make them very attractive for microcontroller applications.

In CF card, data is divided into sectors, one sector usually comprising 512 bytes (few older models have sectors of 256B). Read and write operations are not performed directly, but successively through 512B buffer. Following routines can be used for CF with FAT16, and FAT32 file system. Note that routines for file handling can be used only with FAT16 file system.

**Important!** Before write operation, make sure you don't overwrite boot or FAT sector as it could make your card on PC or digital cam unreadable. Drive mapping tools, such as Winhex, can be of a great assistance.

### Library Routines

```
Cf_Init  
Cf_Detect  
Cf_Enable  
Cf_Disable  
Cf_Read_Init  
Cf_Read_Byte  
Cf_Write_Init  
Cf_Write_Byte  
  
Cf_Fat_Init  
Cf_Fat_Assign  
Cf_Fat_Reset  
Cf_Fat_Read  
Cf_Fat_Rewrite  
Cf_Fat_Append  
Cf_Fat_Delete  
Cf_Fat_Write  
Cf_Fat_Set_File_Date  
Cf_Fat_Get_File_Date  
Cf_Fat_Get_File_Size  
Cf_Fat_Get_Swap_File
```

Function Cf\_Set\_Reg\_Adr is for compiler internal purpose only.

## Cf\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Cf_Init( <b>dim byref</b> ctrlport, dataport <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Initializes ports appropriately for communication with CF card. Specify two different ports: ctrlport and dataport.
<b>Example</b>	Cf_Init(PORTB, PORTD)

## Cf\_Detect

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Cf_Detect <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns 1 if CF is present, otherwise returns 0.
<b>Description</b>	Checks for presence of CF card on ctrlport.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>' Wait until CF card is inserted: do   nop loop until Cf_Detect = 1</pre>

## Cf\_Enable

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Cf_Enable
<b>Description</b>	Enables the device. Routine needs to be called only if you have disabled the device by means of Cf_Disable. These two routines in conjunction allow you to free/occupy data line when working with multiple devices. Check the example at the end of the chapter.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized. See Cf_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Cf_Enable

## Cf\_Disable

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Cf_Disable
<b>Description</b>	Routine disables the device and frees the data line for other devices. To enable the device again, call Cf_Enable. These two routines in conjunction allow you to free/occupy data line when working with multiple devices. Check the example at the end of the chapter.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized. See Cf_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Cf_Disable

## Cf\_Read\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Cf_Read_Init( <b>dim</b> address <b>as</b> longint, <b>dim</b> sectcnt <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Initializes CF card for reading. Parameters: ctrlport is control port, dataport is data port, address specifies sector address from where data will be read, and sectcnt is total number of sectors prepared for read operation.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized. See Cf_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Cf_Read_Init(590, 1)

## Cf\_Read\_Byte

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Cf_Read_Byte <b>as</b> byte
<b>Returns</b>	Returns byte from CF.
<b>Description</b>	Reads one byte from CF.
<b>Requires</b>	CF must be initialized for read operation. See Cf_Read_Init.
<b>Example</b>	PORTC = Cf_Read_Byte



## Cf\_Write\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Cf_Write_Init( <b>dim</b> address <b>as</b> longint, <b>dim</b> sectcnt <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Initializes CF card for writing. Parameter ctrlport is control port, dataport is data port , address specifies sector address where data will be stored, and sectcnt is total number of sectors prepared for write operation.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized. See Cf_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Cf_Write_Init(590, 1)

## Cf\_Write\_Byte

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Cf_Write_Byte( <b>dim</b> data <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Writes one byte (data) to CF. All 512 bytes are transferred to a buffer.
<b>Requires</b>	CF must be initialized for write operation. See Cf_Write_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Cf_Write_Byte(100)

## Cf\_Fat\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Cf_Fat_Init( <b>dim byref</b> ctrlPort <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim byref</b> dataPort <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns <b>1</b> if initialization is successful, <b>0</b> if boot sector was not found and <b>255</b> if card was not detected.
<b>Description</b>	Initializes ports appropriately for FAT operations with CF card. Specify two different ports: ctrlport and dataport.
<b>Requires</b>	Nothing.
<b>Example</b>	Cf_Fat_Init(PORTD, PORTC)

## Cf\_Fat\_Assign

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Cf_Fat_Assign( <b>dim byref</b> filename <b>as array</b> [12] <b>of char</b> , <b>dim</b> create_file <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	"1" if file is present(or file isn't present but new file is created), or "0" if file isn't present and no new file is created.
<b>Description</b>	Assigns file for FAT operations. If file isn't present, function creates new file with given filename. filename parameter is name of file (filename must be in format 8.3 UPPER-CASE). create_file is a parameter for creating new files. if create_file if different from 0 then new file is created (if there is no file with given filename).
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized for FAT operations with CF. See Cf_Fat_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Cf_Fat_Assign('MIKROELE.TXT', 1)

## Cf\_Fat\_Reset

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Cf_Fat_Reset( <b>dim byref</b> size <b>as longint</b> )
<b>Returns</b>	Size of file in bytes. Size is stored on address of input variable.
<b>Description</b>	Opens assigned file for reading.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized for FAT operations with CF. See Cf_Fat_Init. File must be assigned. See Cf_Fat_Assign.
<b>Example</b>	Cf_Fat_Reset(size)

## Cf\_Fat\_Read

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Cf_Fat_Read( <b>dim byref</b> bdata <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Returns</b>	Nothing.
<b>Description</b>	Reads data from file. bdata is data read from file.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized for FAT operations with CF. See Cf_Fat_Init. File must be assigned. See Cf_Fat_Assign. File must be open for reading. See Cf_Fat_Reset.
<b>Example</b>	Cf_Fat_Read(character)

## Cf\_Fat\_Rewrite

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Cf_Fat_Rewrite
<b>Returns</b>	Nothing.
<b>Description</b>	Rewrites assigned file.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized for FAT operations with CF. See Cf_Fat_Init.  File must be assigned. See Cf_Fat_Assign.
<b>Example</b>	Cf_Fat_Rewrite

## Cf\_Fat\_Append

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Cf_Fat_Append
<b>Returns</b>	Nothing.
<b>Description</b>	Opens file for writing. This procedure continues writing from the last byte in file.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized for FAT operations with CF. See Cf_Fat_Init.  File must be assigned. See Cf_Fat_Assign.
<b>Example</b>	Cf_Fat_Append

## Cf\_Fat\_Delete

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Cf_Fat_Delete
<b>Returns</b>	Nothing.
<b>Description</b>	Deletes file from CF.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized for FAT operations with CF. See Cf_Fat_Init.  File must be assigned. See Cf_Fat_Assign.
<b>Example</b>	Cf_Fat_Delete

## Cf\_Fat\_Write

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Cf_Fat_Write( <b>dim byref</b> fdata <b>as array</b> [512] <b>of byte</b> , <b>dim</b> data_len <b>as word</b> )
<b>Returns</b>	Nothing.
<b>Description</b>	Writes data to CF.fdata parameter is data written to CF. data_len number of bytes that is written to CF.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized for FAT operations with CF. See Cf_Fat_Init.  File must be assigned. See Cf_Fat_Assign.  File must be open for writing. See Cf_Fat_Rewrite or Cf_Fat_Append.
<b>Example</b>	Cf_Fat_Write(file_contents, 42) ' write data to the assigned file

## Cf\_Fat\_Set\_File\_Date

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Cf_Fat_Set_File_Date( <b>dim</b> year <b>as word</b> , <b>dim</b> month, day, hours, mins, seconds <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Returns</b>	Nothing.
<b>Description</b>	Sets time attributes of file. You can set file year, month, day. hours, mins, seconds.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized for FAT operations with CF. See Cf_Fat_Init.  File must be assigned. See Cf_Fat_Assign.  File must be open for writing. See Cf_Fat_Rewrite or Cf_Fat_Append.
<b>Example</b>	Cf_Fat_Set_File_Date(2005,9,30,17,41,0)

## Cf\_Fat\_Get\_File\_Date

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Cf_Fat_Get_File_Date( <b>dim byref</b> year <b>as word</b> , <b>dim byref</b> month <b>as word</b> , <b>dim byref</b> day <b>as word</b> , <b>dim byref</b> hours <b>as word</b> , <b>dim byref</b> mins <b>as word</b> )
<b>Returns</b>	Nothing.
<b>Description</b>	Reads time attributes of file. You can read file year, month, day. hours, mins.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized for FAT operations with CF. See Cf_Fat_Init.  File must be assigned. See Cf_Fat_Assign.
<b>Example</b>	Cf_Fat_Get_File_Date(year, month, day, hours, mins)

## Cf\_Fat\_Get\_File\_Size

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Cf_Fat_Get_File_Size <b>as longint</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Size of file in bytes.
<b>Description</b>	This function returns size of file in bytes.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized for FAT operations with CF. See Cf_Fat_Init.  File must be assigned. See Cf_Fat_Assign.
<b>Example</b>	Cf_Fat_Get_File_Size

## Cf\_Fat\_Get\_Swap\_File

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Cf_Fat_Get_Swap_File( <b>dim</b> sectors_cnt <b>as longint</b> ) <b>as longint</b>
<b>Returns</b>	No. of start sector for the newly created swap file, if swap file was created; otherwise, the function returns zero.
<b>Description</b>	<p>This function is used to create a swap file on the CF media. It accepts as sectors_cnt argument the number of consecutive sectors that user wants the swap file to have. During its execution, the function searches for the available consecutive sectors, their number being specified by the sectors_cnt argument. If there is such space on the media, the swap file named MIKROSWP.SYS is created, and that space is designated (in FAT tables) to it. The attributes of this file are: system, archive and hidden, in order to distinct it from other files. If a file named MIKROSWP.SYS already exists on the media, this function deletes it upon creating the new one.</p> <p>The purpose of the swap file is to make reading and writing to CF media as fast as possible, without potentially damaging the FAT system. Swap file can be considered as a "window" on the media where user can freely write/read the data, in any way (s)he wants to. Its main purpose in mikroBasic library is to be used for fast data acquisition; when the time-critical acquisition has finished, the data can be re-written into a "normal" file, and formatted in the most suitable way.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized for FAT operations with CF. See Cf_Fat_Init.
<b>Example</b>	<p><i>'----- Tries to create a swap file, whose size will be 'at least 1000 sectors. 'If it succeeds, it sends the No. of start sector over USART</i></p> <pre> <b>sub procedure</b> C_Create_Swap_File     size = Cf_Fat_Get_Swap_File(1000)     <b>if</b> (size) <b>then</b>         Usart_Write(\$AA)         Usart_Write(Lo(size))         Usart_Write(Hi(size))         Usart_Write(Higher(size))         Usart_Write(Highest(size))         Usart_Write(\$AA)     <b>end if</b> <b>end sub</b> </pre>

## Library Examples

The following example writes 512 bytes at sector no.590, and then reads the data and prints on PORTC for a visual check.

```

program Cf_example
dim i as word
dim temp, k as longint

main:
    TRISC = 0                                ' PORTC is output
    Cf_Init(PORTB, PORTD)                   ' Initialize ports

    do
        nop
        loop until Cf_Detect = true         ' Wait until CF card is inserted

    Delay_ms(500)
    Cf_Write_Init(590, 1)                   ' Initialize write at sector
    address 590                             ' of 1 sector (512 bytes)

    for i = 0 to 511                       ' Write 512 bytes to sector (590)
        Cf_Write_Byte(i + 11)
    next i

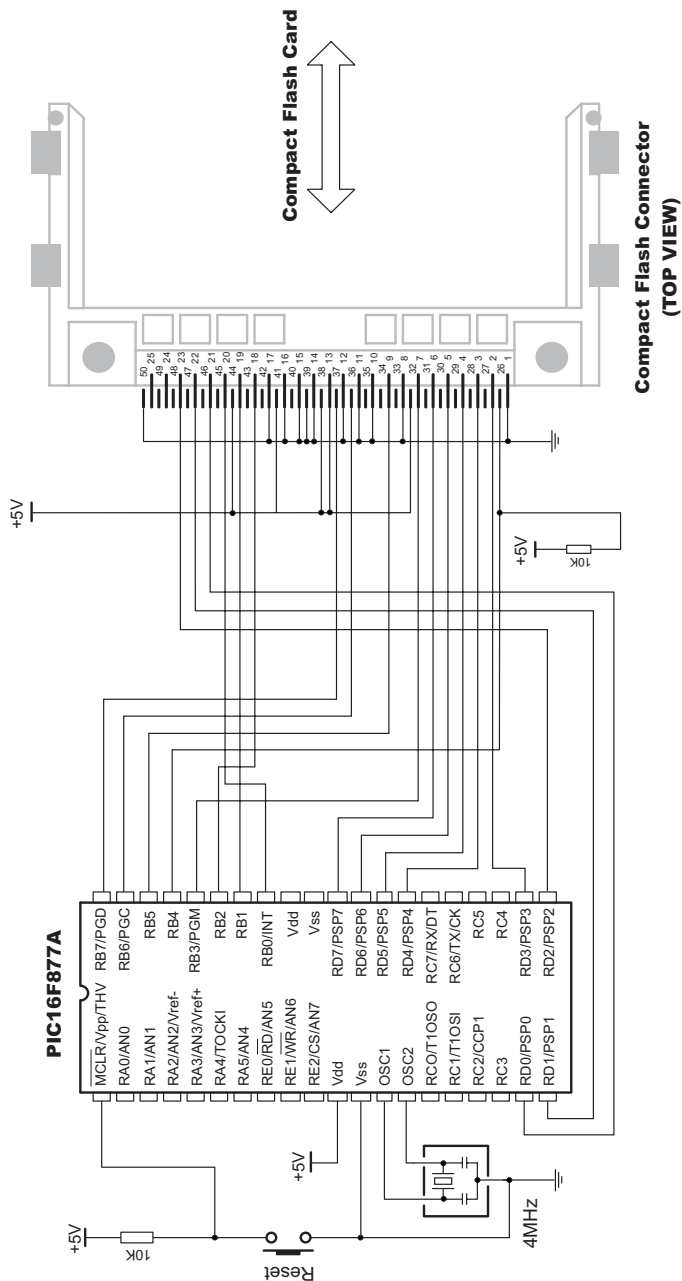
    PORTC = $FF
    Delay_ms(1000)
    Cf_Read_Init(590, 1)                   ' Initialize write at sector
    address 590                             ' of 1 sector (512 bytes)

    for i = 0 to 511                       ' Read 512 bytes from sector (590)
        PORTC = Cf_Read_Byte               ' Read byte and display on PORTC
        Delay_ms(1000)
    next i
end.

```



## HW Connection



## EEPROM Library

EEPROM data memory is available with a number of PICmicros. mikroBasic includes library for comfortable work with EEPROM.

### Library Routines

Eeprom\_Read  
Eeprom\_Write

#### Eeprom\_Read

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Eeprom_Read( <b>dim</b> address <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns byte from specified address.
<b>Description</b>	Reads data from specified address. Parameter address is of byte type, which means it can address only 256 locations. For PIC18 micros with more EEPROM data locations, it is programmer's responsibility to set EEADRH register appropriately.
<b>Requires</b>	Requires EEPROM module.  Ensure minimum 20ms delay between successive use of routines Eeprom_Write and Eeprom_Read. Although PIC will write the correct value, Eeprom_Read might return an undefined result.
<b>Example</b>	take = Eeprom_Read(\$3F)

## Eeprom\_Write

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Eeprom_Write( <b>dim</b> address, data <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	<p>Writes data to specified address. Parameter address is of byte type, which means it can address only 256 locations. For PIC18 micros with more EEPROM data locations, it is programmer's responsibility to set EEADRH register appropriately.</p> <p>Be aware that all interrupts will be disabled during execution of Eeprom_Write routine (GIE bit of INTCON register will be cleared). Routine will set this bit on exit.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	<p>Requires EEPROM module.</p> <p>Ensure minimum 20ms delay between successive use of routines Eeprom_Write and Eeprom_Read. Although PIC will write the correct value, Eeprom_Read might return an undefined result.</p>
<b>Example</b>	Eeprom_Write(\$32)

## Library Example

The example writes values at 20 successive locations of EEPROM. Then, it reads the written data and prints on PORTB for a visual check.

```

program eeprom_test
dim i, j as char

main:
    TRISB = 0
    for i = 0 to 20
        Eeprom_Write(i, i + 6)
    next i

    for i = 0 to 20
        PORTB = Eeprom_Read(i)
        for j = 0 to 200
            Delay_us(500)
        next j
    next i
end.

```

## Ethernet Library

This library is designed to simplify handling of the underlying hardware (RTL8019AS). However, certain level of knowledge about the Ethernet and Ethernet-based protocols (ARP, IP, TCP/IP, UDP/IP, ICMP/IP) is expected from the user. The Ethernet is a high-speed and versatile protocol, but it is not a simple one. Once you get used to it, however, you will make your favorite PIC available to a much broader audience than you could do with the RS232/485 or CAN.

### Library Routines

Eth\_Init  
Eth\_Set\_Ip\_Address  
Eth\_Inport  
Eth\_Scan\_For\_Event  
Eth\_Get\_Ip\_Hdr\_Len  
Eth\_Load\_Ip\_Packet  
Eth\_Get\_Hdr\_Chksum  
Eth\_Get\_Source\_Ip\_Address  
Eth\_Get\_Dest\_Ip\_Address  
Eth\_Arp\_Response  
Eth\_Get\_Icmp\_Info  
Eth\_Ping\_Response  
Eth\_Get\_Udp\_Source\_Port  
Eth\_Get\_Udp\_Dest\_Port  
Eth\_Get\_Udp\_Port  
Eth\_Set\_Udp\_Port  
Eth\_Send\_Udp  
Eth\_Load\_Tcp\_Header  
Eth\_Get\_Tcp\_Hdr\_Offset  
Eth\_Get\_Tcp\_Flags  
Eth\_Set\_Tcp\_Data  
Eth\_Tcp\_Response

## Eth\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Eth_Init( <b>dim byref</b> addrP, dataP, ctrlP <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim</b> pinReset, pinIOW, pinIOR <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Performs initialization of Ethernet card and library. This includes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Setting of control and data ports;</li> <li>- Initialization of the Ethernet card (also called the Network Interface Card, or NIC);</li> <li>- Retrieval and local storage of the NIC's hardware (MAC) address;</li> <li>- Putting the NIC into the LISTEN mode.</li> </ul> <p>Parameter addrP is a pointer to address port, which handles the addressing lines. Parameter dataP is pointer to data port. Parameter ctrlP is the control port. Parameter pinReset is the reset/enable pin for the ethernet card chip (on control port). Parameter pinIOW is the I/O Write request control pin. Parameter pinIOR is the I/O read request control pin.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	As specified for the entire library.
<b>Example</b>	Eth_Init(PORTB, PORTD, PORTE, 2, 1, 0)

## Eth\_Set\_Ip\_Address

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Eth_Set_Ip_Address( <b>dim</b> ip1, ip2, ip3, ip4 <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Sets the IP address of the connected and initialized Ethernet network card. The arguments are the IP address numbers, in IPv4 format (e.g. 127.0.0.1).
<b>Requires</b>	This procedure should be called immediately after the NIC initialization (see Eth_Init). You can change your IP address at any time, anywhere in the code.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>' Set IP address 192.168.20.25 Eth_Set_Ip_Address(192, 168, 20, 25)</pre>

## Eth\_Set\_Inport

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Eth_Inport( <b>dim</b> address <b>as</b> byte) <b>as</b> byte
<b>Returns</b>	One byte from the specified address.
<b>Description</b>	Retrieves a byte from the specified address of the Ethernet card chip.
<b>Requires</b>	The card (NIC) must be properly initialized. See Eth_Init.
<b>Example</b>	udp_length = udp_length <b>or</b> Eth_Inport(NIC_DATA)

## Eth\_Scan\_For\_Event

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Eth_Scan_For_Event( <b>dim byref</b> next_ptr <b>as</b> byte) <b>as</b> word
<b>Returns</b>	Type of the ethernet packet received. Two types are distinguished: ARP (MAC-IP address data request) and IP (Internet Protocol).
<b>Description</b>	Retrieves sender's MAC (hardware) address and type of the packet received. The function argument is an (internal) pointer to the next data packet in RTL8019's buffer, and is of no particular importance to the end user.
<b>Requires</b>	The card (NIC) must be properly initialized. See Eth_Init. Also, the function must be called in a proper sequence, i.e. right after the card init and IP address/UDP port init.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> <b>while</b> TRUE   event_type = Eth_Scan_For_Event(next_ptr)  ' Scan for event   <b>select case</b> event_type     <b>case</b> ARP       Arp_Event()  ' Some event handler     <b>case</b> IP       Ip_Event()   ' Some event handler   <b>end select</b>   Eth_Outport(CR, \$22)   Eth_Outport(BNDRY, next_ptr) <b>wend</b> </pre>

## Eth\_Get\_Ip\_Hdr\_Len

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Eth_Get_Ip_Hdr_Len <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Header length of the received IP packet.
<b>Description</b>	Function returns header length of the received IP packet. Before other data based upon the IP protocol (TCP, UDP, ICMP) can be analyzed, the sub-protocol data must be properly loaded from the received IP packet.
<b>Requires</b>	The card (NIC) must be properly initialized. See Eth_Init. The function must be called in a proper sequence, i.e. immediately after determining that the packet received is the IP packet.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>' Receive IP Header opt_len = Eth_Get_Ip_Hdr_Len() - 20</pre>

## Eth\_Load\_Ip\_Packet

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Eth_Load_Ip_Packet
<b>Description</b>	Loads various IP packet data into PIC's Ethernet variables.
<b>Requires</b>	The card (NIC) must be properly initialized. See Eth_Init. Also, a proper sequence of calls must be obeyed (see the Ip_Event function in the supplied Ethernet example).
<b>Example</b>	<pre>Eth_Load_Ip_Packet()</pre>

## Eth\_Get\_Hdr\_Chksum

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Eth_Get_Hdr_Chksum
<b>Description</b>	Loads and returns the header checksum of the received IP packet.
<b>Requires</b>	The card (NIC) must be properly initialized. See <code>Eth_Init</code> . Also, a proper sequence of calls must be obeyed (see the <code>Ip_Event</code> function in the supplied Ethernet example).
<b>Example</b>	<code>Eth_Get_Hdr_Chksum()</code>

## Eth\_Get\_Source\_Ip\_Address

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Eth_Get_Source_Ip_Address
<b>Description</b>	Loads and returns the IP address of the sender of the received IP packet.
<b>Requires</b>	The card (NIC) must be properly initialized. See <code>Eth_Init</code> . Also, a proper sequence of calls must be obeyed (see the <code>Ip_Event</code> function in the supplied Ethernet example).
<b>Example</b>	<code>Eth_Get_Source_Ip_Address()</code>

## Eth\_Get\_Dest\_Ip\_Address

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Eth_Get_Dest_Ip_Address
<b>Description</b>	Loads the IP address of the received IP packet for which the packet is designated.
<b>Requires</b>	The card (NIC) must be properly initialized. See <code>Eth_Init</code> . Also, a proper sequence of calls must be obeyed (see the <code>Ip_Event</code> function in the supplied Ethernet example).
<b>Example</b>	<code>Eth_Get_Dest_Ip_Address()</code>



## Eth\_Arp\_Response

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Eth_Arp_Response
<b>Description</b>	An automated ARP response. User should simply call this function once he detects the ARP event on the NIC.
<b>Requires</b>	As specified for the entire library.
<b>Example</b>	Eth_Arp_Response ( )

## Eth\_Get\_Icmp\_Info

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Eth_Get_Icmp_Info
<b>Description</b>	Loads ICMP protocol information (from the header of the received ICMP packet) and stores it to the PIC's Ethernet variables.
<b>Requires</b>	The card (NIC) must be properly initialized. See Eth_Init. Also, this function must be called in a proper sequence, and before the Eth_Ping_Response.
<b>Example</b>	Eth_Get_Icmp_Info ( )

## Eth\_Ping\_Response

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Eth_Ping_Response
<b>Description</b>	An automated ICMP (Ping) response. User should call this function when answering to an ICMP/IP event.
<b>Requires</b>	As specified for the entire library.
<b>Example</b>	Eth_Ping_Response ( )

## Eth\_Get\_Udp\_Source\_Port

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Eth_Get_Udp_Source_Port <b>as word</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns the source port (socket) of the received UDP packet.
<b>Description</b>	The function returns the source port (socket) of the received UDP packet. After the reception of valid IP packet is detected and its type is determined to be UDP, the UDP packet header must be interpreted. UDP source port is the first data in the UDP header.
<b>Requires</b>	This function must be called in a proper sequence, i.e. immediately after interpretation of the IP packet header (at the very beginning of UDP packet header retrieval).
<b>Example</b>	<code>udp_source_port = Eth_Get_Udp_Source_Port()</code>

## Eth\_Get\_Udp\_Dest\_Port

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Eth_Get_Udp_Dest_Port <b>as word</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns the destination port of the received UDP packet.
<b>Description</b>	The function returns the destination port of the received UDP packet. The second information contained in the UDP packet header is the destination port (socket) to which the packet is targeted.
<b>Requires</b>	This function must be called in a proper sequence, i.e. immediately after calling the Eth_Get_Udp_Source_Port function.
<b>Example</b>	<code>udp_dest_port = Eth_Get_Udp_Dest_Port()</code>

## Eth\_Get\_Udp\_Port

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Eth_Get_Udp_Port <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns the UDP port (socket) number that is set for the PIC's Ethernet card.
<b>Description</b>	The function returns the UDP port (socket) number that is set for the PIC's Ethernet card. After the UDP port is set at the beginning of the session (Eth_Set_Udp_Port), its number is later used to test whether the received UDP packet is targeted at the port we are using.
<b>Requires</b>	The network card must be properly initialized (see Eth_Init), and the UDP port propely set (see Eth_Set_Udp_Port). This library currently supports working with only one UDP port (socket) at a time.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>if udp_dest_port = Eth_Get_Udp_Port() then ... ' Respond to action</pre>

## Eth\_Set\_Udp\_Port

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Eth_Set_Udp_Port ( <b>dim</b> udp_port <b>as word</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Sets up the default UDP port, which will handle user requests. The user can decide, upon receiving the UDP packet, which port was this packet sent to, and whether it will be handled or rejected.
<b>Requires</b>	As specified for the entire library.
<b>Example</b>	Eth_Set_Udp_Port(10001)

## Eth\_Send\_Udp

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Eth_Send_Udp( <b>dim</b> msg <b>as</b> string[16])
<b>Description</b>	<p>Sends the prepared UDP message (msg), of up to 16 bytes (characters).</p> <p>Unlike ICMP and TCP, the UDP packets are generally not generated as a response to the client request. UDP provides no guarantees for message delivery and sender retains no state on UDP messages once sent onto the network. This is why UDP packets are simply sent, instead of being a response to someone's request.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	As specified for the entire library. Also, the message to be sent must be formatted as a null-terminated string. The message length, including the trailing "0", must not exceed 16 characters.
<b>Example</b>	Eth_Send_Udp(udp_tx_message)

## Eth\_Load\_Tcp\_Header

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Eth_Load_Tcp_Header
<b>Description</b>	Loads various TCP Header data into PIC's Ethernet variables.
<b>Requires</b>	This function must be called in a proper sequence, i.e. immediately after retrieving the source and destination port (socket) of the TCP message.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> tcp_source_port = Eth_Inport(NIC_DATA) &lt;&lt; 8  ' get src port tcp_source_port = tcp_source_port <b>or</b> Eth_Inport(NIC_DATA) tcp_dest_port = Eth_Inport(NIC_DATA) &lt;&lt; 8  ' get dest port tcp_dest_port = tcp_dest_port <b>or</b> Eth_Inport(NIC_DATA)  ' We only respond to port 80 (HTML requests) <b>if</b> tcp_dest_port = 80 <b>then</b>     ' retrieve TCP Header data (most of it)     Eth_Load_Tcp_Header()     '... <b>end if</b> </pre>

## Eth\_Get\_Tcp\_Hdr\_Offset

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Eth_Get_Tcp_Hdr_Offset <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns the length (or offset) of the TCP packet header in bytes.
<b>Description</b>	The function returns the length (or offset) of the TCP packet header in bytes. Upon receiving a valid TCP packet, its header is to be analyzed in order to respond properly (e.g. respond to other's request, merge several packets into the message, etc.). The header length is important to know in order to be able to extract the information contained in it.
<b>Requires</b>	This function must be called after the <code>Eth_Load_Tcp_Header</code> , since it initializes the private variables used for this function.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>' calculate offset (TCP header length) tcp_options = Eth_Get_Tcp_Hdr_Offset() - 20</pre>

## Eth\_Get\_Tcp\_Flags

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Eth_Get_Tcp_Flags <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns the flags data from the header of the received TCP packet.
<b>Description</b>	The function returns the flags data from the header of the received TCP packet. TCP flags show various information, e.g. SYN (synchronize request), ACK (acknowledge receipt), and similar. It is upon these flags that, for example, a proper HTTP communication is established.
<b>Requires</b>	This function must be called after the <code>Eth_Load_Tcp_Header</code> , since it initializes the private variables used for this function.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>flags = Eth_Get_Tcp_Flags()</pre>

## Eth\_Set\_Tcp\_Data

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Eth_Set_Tcp_Data( <b>const</b> data <b>as</b> ^ <b>byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Prepares data to be sent on HTTP request. This library can handle only HTTP requests, so sending other TCP-based protocols, such as FTP, will cause an error. Note that TCP/IP was not designed with 8-bit MCU's in mind, so be gentle with your HTTP requests.
<b>Requires</b>	As specified for the entire library.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>' Let's prepare a simple HTML page in our string: <b>const</b> httpPage1 =     "HTTP/1.0 200 OK" + Chr(13) + Chr(10) +     "Content-type: text/html" + Chr(13) + Chr(10) +     "&lt;html&gt;" + Chr(10) + "&lt;body&gt;" + Chr(10) +     "&lt;h1&gt;Hello world!&lt;/h1&gt;" + Chr(10) +     "&lt;/body&gt;" + Chr(10) + "&lt;/html&gt;" '... Eth_Set_Tcp_Data(@httpPage1)</pre>

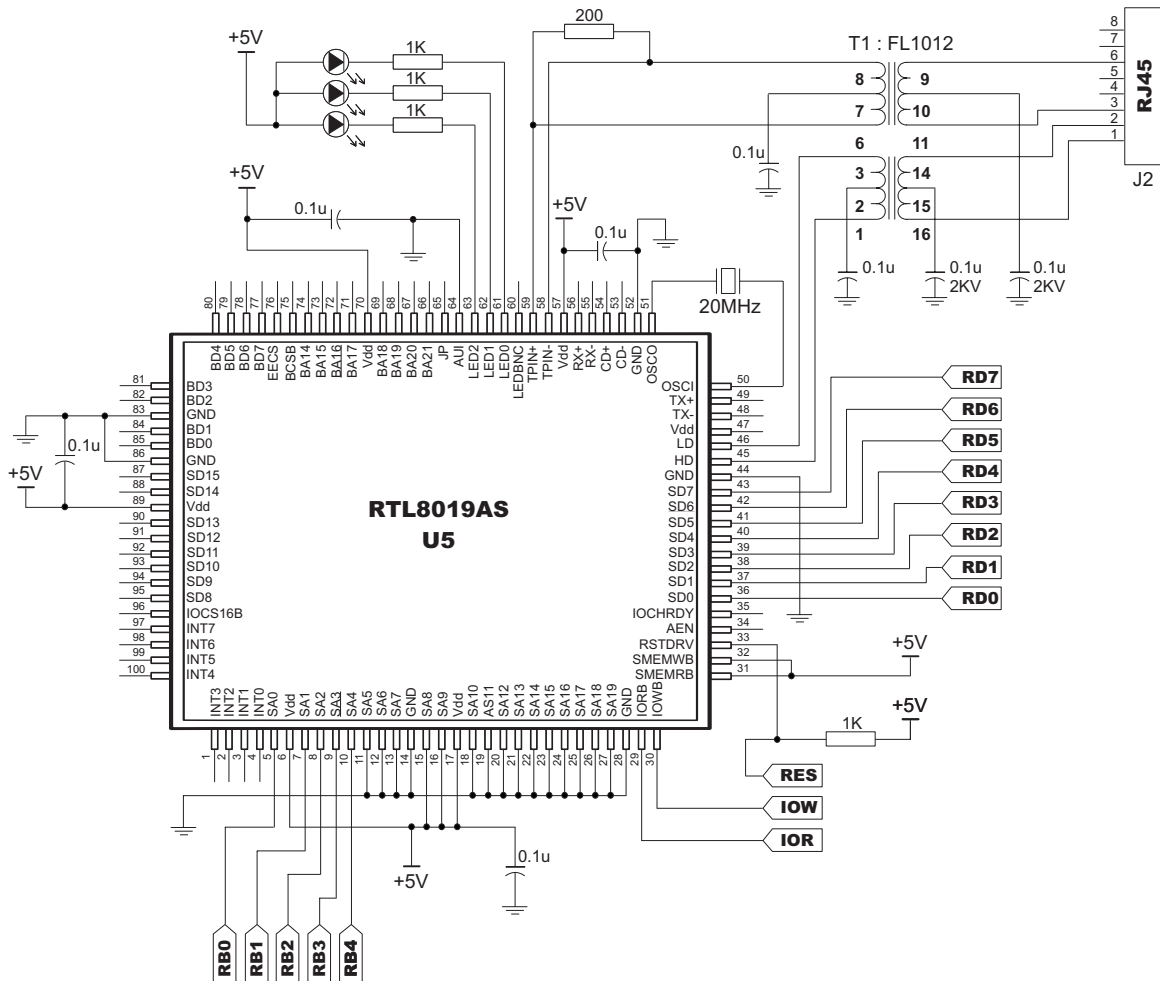
## Eth\_Tcp\_Response

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Eth_Tcp_Response
<b>Description</b>	Performs user response to TCP/IP event. User specifies data to be sent, depending on the request received (HTTP, HTTPD, FTP, etc). This is performed by the function Eth_Set_Tcp_Data.
<b>Requires</b>	Hardware requirements are as specified for the entire library. Prior to using this procedure, user must prepare the data to be sent through TCP; see Eth_Set_Tcp_Data.
<b>Example</b>	Eth_Tcp_Response()

## Library Example

Check the supplied Ethernet example in the *Examples* folder.

## HW Connection



## Flash Memory Library

This library provides routines for accessing microcontroller Flash memory. Note that prototypes differ for PIC16 and PIC18 families.

### Library Routines

Flash\_Read  
Flash\_Write

#### Flash\_Read

Prototype	<pre>sub function Flash_Read(dim address as word) as byte ' PIC16 sub function Flash_Read(dim address as longint) as byte ' PIC18</pre>
Returns	Returns data byte from Flash memory.
Description	Reads data from the specified address in Flash memory.
Example	<pre>Flash_Read(\$D00)</pre>

#### Flash\_Write

Prototype	<pre>sub procedure Flash_Write(dim address, data as word) ' PIC16 sub procedure Flash_Write(dim address as longint, dim byref data as byte[64]) ' PIC18</pre>
Description	Writes chunk of data to Flash memory. With PIC18, data needs to be exactly 64 bytes in size. Keep in mind that this function erases target memory before writing Data to it. This means that if write was unsuccessful, previous data will be lost.
Example	<pre>' Write consecutive values in 64 consecutive locations for i = 0 to 63     toWrite[i] = i next i  Flash_Write(\$0D00, toWrite)</pre>



## Library Example

The example writes 64 consecutive values to 64 consecutive locations in flash memory. Then, it verifies the written data, with error indication on PORTB.

```

program flash_pic18    ' for PIC18

const FLASH_ERROR = $FF
const FLASH_OK    = $AA

dim toRead, i as byte
dim toWrite as byte[64]

main:
    TRISB = 0                                ' PORTB is output

    for i = 0 to 63 do                        ' Initialize array
        toWrite[i] = i
    next i

    Flash_Write($0D00, toWrite)                ' Write array contents to address 0x0D00

    ' Verify write
    PORTB = 0                                ' Turn off PORTB
    toRead = FLASH_ERROR                      ' Initialize error state

    for i = 0 to 63
        toRead = Flash_Read($0D00+i)          ' Read 64 locations starting from 0x0D00
        if toRead <> toWrite[i] then          ' Stop at first error
            PORTB = FLASH_ERROR                ' Indicate error
            break                              ' Stop verify
        else PORTB = FLASH_OK                  ' Indicate no error
        end if
    next i
end.

```

# I2C Library

I<sup>2</sup>C full master MSSP module is available with a number of PIC MCU models. mikroBasic provides I2C library which supports the master I<sup>2</sup>C mode.

**Note:** This library supports module on PORTB or PORTC, and will not work with modules on other ports. Examples for PICmicros with module on other ports can be found in your mikroBasic installation folder, subfolder “Examples”.

## Library Routines

I2C\_Init  
I2C\_Start  
I2C\_Repeated\_Start  
I2C\_Is\_Idle  
I2C\_Rd  
I2C\_Wr  
I2C\_Stop

## I2C\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<code>sub procedure I2C_Init(const clock as longint)</code>
<b>Description</b>	Initializes I <sup>2</sup> C with desired <code>clock</code> (refer to device data sheet for correct values in respect with <code>Fosc</code> ). Needs to be called before using other functions of I2C Library.
<b>Requires</b>	Library requires MSSP module on PORTB or PORTC.
<b>Example</b>	<code>I2C_Init(100000)</code>

## I2C\_Start

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> I2C_Start <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	If there is no error, function returns 0.
<b>Description</b>	Determines if I <sup>2</sup> C bus is free and issues START signal.
<b>Requires</b>	I <sup>2</sup> C must be configured before using this function. See I2C_Init.
<b>Example</b>	<b>if</b> I2C_Start = 0 <b>then</b> ...

## I2C\_Repeated\_Start

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> I2C_Repeated_Start
<b>Description</b>	Issues repeated START signal.
<b>Requires</b>	I <sup>2</sup> C must be configured before using this function. See I2C_Init.
<b>Example</b>	I2C_Repeated_Start

## I2C\_Is\_Idle

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> I2C_Is_Idle <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns 1 if I <sup>2</sup> C bus is free, otherwise returns 0.
<b>Description</b>	Tests if I <sup>2</sup> C bus is free.
<b>Requires</b>	I <sup>2</sup> C must be configured before using this function. See I2C_Init.
<b>Example</b>	<b>if</b> I2C_Is_Idle <b>then</b> ...

## I2C\_Rd

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> I2C_Rd( <b>dim</b> ack <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns one byte from the slave.
<b>Description</b>	Reads one byte from the slave, and sends not acknowledge signal if parameter ack is 0, otherwise it sends acknowledge.
<b>Requires</b>	START signal needs to be issued in order to use this function. See I2C_Start.
<b>Example</b>	<code>tmp = I2C_Rd(0) ' Read data and send not acknowledge signal</code>

## I2C\_Wr

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> I2C_Wr( <b>dim</b> data <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns 0 if there were no errors.
<b>Description</b>	Sends data byte (parameter data) via I <sup>2</sup> C bus.
<b>Requires</b>	START signal needs to be issued in order to use this function. See I2C_Start.
<b>Example</b>	<code>I2C_Write(\$A3)</code>

## I2C\_Stop

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> I2C_Stop
<b>Description</b>	Issues STOP signal.
<b>Requires</b>	I <sup>2</sup> C must be configured before using this function. See I2C_Init.

## Library Example

This code demonstrates use of I2C Library procedures and functions. PIC MCU is connected (pins SCL, SDA) to 24c02 EEPROM. Program sends data to EEPROM (data is written at address 2). Then, we read data via I2C from EEPROM and send its value to PORTD, to check if the cycle was successful (figure on the following page shows how to interface 24c02 to PIC).

```

program Eeprom_test

dim EE_adr, EE_data, k as byte
dim jj as word

main:
    I2C_Init(100000)           ' Initialize full master mode
    TRISD = 0                  ' PORTD is output
    PORTD = $FF                ' Initialize PORTD
    I2C_Start                  ' Issue I2C start signal
    I2C_Wr($A2)                ' Send byte via I2C(command to 24c02)
    EE_adr = 2
    I2C_Wr(EE_adr)             ' Send byte(address for EEPROM)
    EE_data = $AA
    I2C_Wr(EE_data)            ' Send data(data that will be written)
    I2C_Stop                   ' Issue I2C stop signal

    ' Pause while EEPROM writes data
    for jj = 0 to 65500
        nop
    next jj

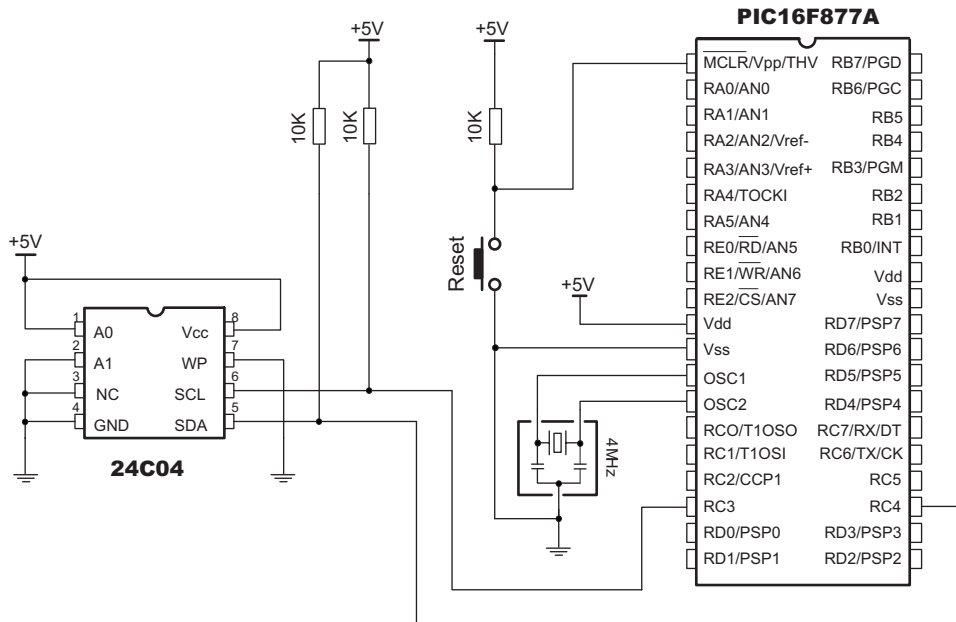
    I2C_Start                  ' Issue I2C start signal
    I2C_Wr($A2)                ' Send byte via I2C
    EE_adr = 2
    I2C_Wr(EE_adr)             ' Send byte(address for EEPROM)
    I2C_Repeated_Start        ' Issue I2C signal repeated start
    I2C_Wr($A3)                ' Send byte (request data from EEPROM)
    k = I2C_Rd(1)              ' Read the data
    I2C_Stop                   ' Issue I2C stop signal
    PORTD = k                  ' Show data on PORTD

    ' Endless loop
    while true
        nop
    wend

end.

```

## HW Connection



## Keypad Library

mikroBasic provides library for working with 4x4 keypad; routines can also be used with 4x1, 4x2, or 4x3 keypad. Check the connection scheme at the end of the topic.

### Library Routines

Keypad\_Init  
Keypad\_Read  
Keypad\_Released

### Keypad\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Keypad_Init( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as word</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Initializes port to work with keypad. The procedure needs to be called before using other routines from Keypad library.
<b>Example</b>	Keypad_Init(PORTB)

### Keypad\_Read

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Keypad_Read <b>as word</b>
<b>Returns</b>	1..16, depending on the key pressed, or 0 if no key is pressed.
<b>Description</b>	Checks if any key is pressed. Function returns 1 to 16, depending on the key pressed, or 0 if no key is pressed.
<b>Requires</b>	Port needs to be appropriately initialized; see Keypad_Init.
<b>Example</b>	kp = Keypad_Read

## Keypad\_Released

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Keypad_Released <b>as word</b>
<b>Returns</b>	1..16, depending on the key.
<b>Description</b>	Call to Keypad_Released is a blocking call: function waits until any key is pressed and released. When released, function returns 1 to 16, depending on the key.
<b>Requires</b>	Port needs to be appropriately initialized; see Keypad_Init.
<b>Example</b>	kp = Keypad_Released



## Library Example

The following code can be used for testing the keypad. It supports keypads with 1 to 4 rows and 1 to 4 columns. The code returned by the keypad functions (1..16) is transformed into ASCII codes [0..9,A..F]. In addition, a small single-byte counter displays the total number of keys pressed in the second LCD row.

```

program keypad_test

dim kp, cnt as byte
dim txt as string[5]

main:
    cnt = 0
    Keypad_Init(PORTC)
    Lcd_Init(PORTB)           ' Initialize LCD on PORTC
    Lcd_Cmd(LCD_CLEAR)       ' Clear display
    Lcd_Cmd(LCD_CURSOR_OFF)  ' Cursor off

    Lcd_Out(1, 1, "Key  :")
    Lcd_Out(2, 1, "Times:")

    while TRUE
        kp = 0

        '--- Wait for key to be pressed
        while kp = 0
            '--- un-comment one of the keypad reading functions
            kp = Keypad_Released
            'kp = Keypad_Read
        wend

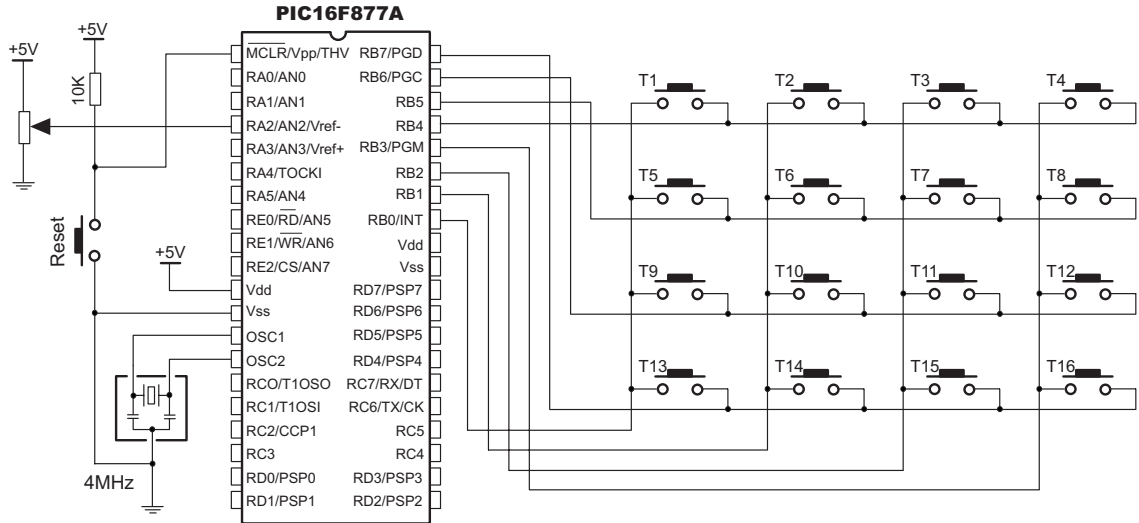
        Inc(cnt)

        '--- prepare value for output
        if kp > 10 then
            kp = kp + 54
        else
            kp = kp + 47
        end if

        '--- print it on LCD
        Lcd_Chrc(1, 10, kp)
        WordToStr(cnt, txt)
        Lcd_Out(2, 10, txt)
    wend
end.

```

## HW Connection



## LCD Library (4-bit interface)

mikroBasic provides a library for communicating with commonly used LCD (4-bit interface). Figures showing HW connection of PIC and LCD are given at the end of the chapter.

**Note:** Be sure to designate port with LCD as output, before using any of the following library functions.

### Library Routines

Lcd\_Config  
Lcd\_Init  
Lcd\_Out  
Lcd\_Out\_Cp  
Lcd\_Chr  
Lcd\_Chr\_Cp  
Lcd\_Cmd

### Lcd\_Config

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Lcd_Config( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim</b> RS, EN, WR, D7, D6, D5, D4 <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Initializes LCD at port with pin settings you specify: parameters RS, EN, WR, D7 .. D4 need to be a combination of values 0–7 (e.g. 3,6,0,7,2,1,4).
<b>Example</b>	Lcd_Config(PORTD,1,2,0,3,5,4,6)

## Lcd\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Lcd_Init( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Initializes LCD at port with default pin settings (see the connection scheme at the end of the chapter): D7 -> PORT.7, D6 -> PORT.6, D5 -> PORT.5, D4 -> PORT.4, E -> PORT.3, RS -> PORT.2.
<b>Example</b>	Lcd_Init(PORTB)

## Lcd\_Out

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Lcd_Out( <b>dim</b> row, col <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim byref</b> text <b>as char</b> [255])
<b>Description</b>	Prints text on LCD at specified row and column (parameter row and col). Both string variables and literals can be passed as text.
<b>Requires</b>	Port with LCD must be initialized. See Lcd_Config or Lcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Lcd_Out(1, 3, "Hello!") ' Print "Hello!" at line 1, char 3

## Lcd\_Out\_Cp

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Lcd_Out_Cp( <b>dim byref</b> text <b>as char</b> [255])
<b>Description</b>	Prints text on LCD at current cursor position. Both string variables and literals can be passed as text.
<b>Requires</b>	Port with LCD must be initialized. See Lcd_Config or Lcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Lcd_Out_Cp("Here!") ' Print "Here!" at current cursor position

## Lcd\_Ch

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Lcd_Ch( <b>dim</b> row, col, character <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Prints character on LCD at specified row and column (parameters row and col). Both variables and literals can be passed as character.
<b>Requires</b>	Port with LCD must be initialized. See Lcd_Config or Lcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Lcd_Ch(2, 3, "i") <i>' Print "i" at line 2, char 3</i>

## Lcd\_Ch\_Cp

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Lcd_Ch_Cp( <b>dim</b> character <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Prints character on LCD at current cursor position. Both variables and literals can be passed as character.
<b>Requires</b>	Port with LCD must be initialized. See Lcd_Config or Lcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Lcd_Ch_Cp("e") <i>' Print "e" at current cursor position</i>

## Lcd\_Cmd

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Lcd_Cmd( <b>dim</b> command <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Sends command to LCD. You can pass one of the predefined constants to the function. The complete list of available commands is shown on the page 140.
<b>Requires</b>	Port with LCD must be initialized. See Lcd_Config or Lcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Lcd_Cmd(LCD_CLEAR) <i>' Clear LCD display</i>

## LCD Commands

LCD Command	Purpose
LCD_FIRST_ROW	Move cursor to 1st row
LCD_SECOND_ROW	Move cursor to 2nd row
LCD_THIRD_ROW	Move cursor to 3rd row
LCD_FOURTH_ROW	Move cursor to 4th row
LCD_CLEAR	Clear display
LCD_RETURN_HOME	Return cursor to home position, returns a shifted display to original position. Display data RAM is unaffected.
LCD_CURSOR_OFF	Turn off cursor
LCD_UNDERLINE_ON	Underline cursor on
LCD_BLINK_CURSOR_ON	Blink cursor on
LCD_MOVE_CURSOR_LEFT	Move cursor left without changing display data RAM
LCD_MOVE_CURSOR_RIGHT	Move cursor right without changing display data RAM
LCD_TURN_ON	Turn LCD display on
LCD_TURN_OFF	Turn LCD display off
LCD_SHIFT_LEFT	Shift display left without changing display data RAM
LCD_SHIFT_RIGHT	Shift display right without changing display data RAM

## Library Example (default pin settings)

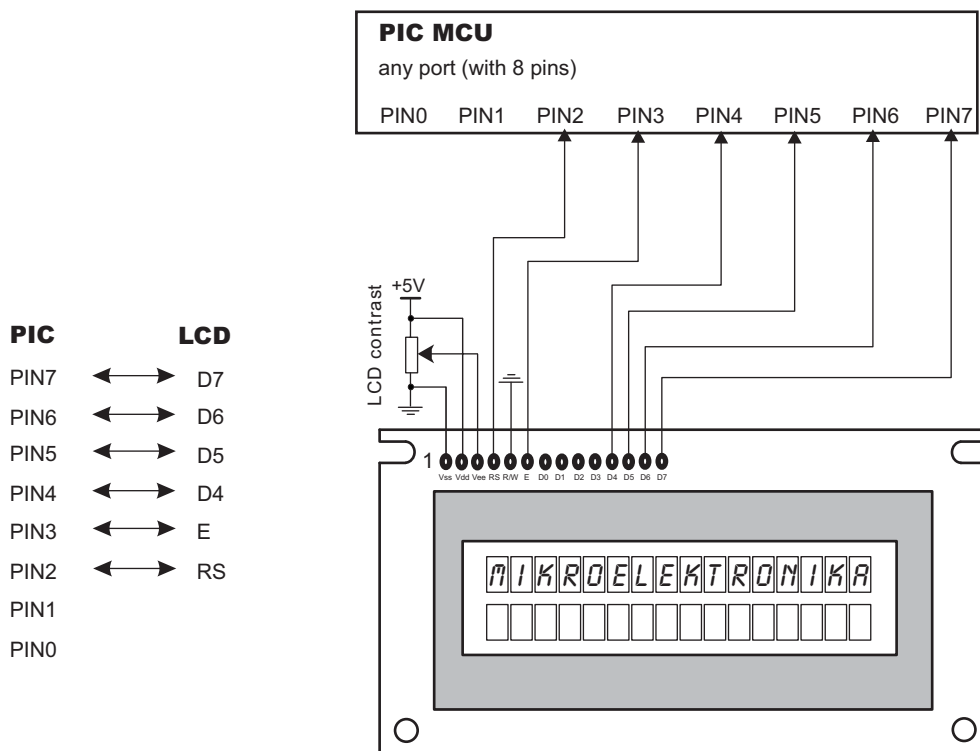
```

program Lcd_default_test
dim text as char[20]

main:
    TRISB = 0                                ' PORTB is output
    Lcd_Init(PORTB)                          ' Initialize LCD on PORTB
    Lcd_Cmd(Lcd_CURSOR_OFF)                  ' Turn off cursor
    text = "mikroElektronika"
    Lcd_Out(1, 1, text)                      ' Print text at LCD
end.

```

## Hardware Connection



## Custom LCD Library (4-bit interface)

mikroBasic provides a library for communicating with commonly used LCD (4-bit interface) with custom defined pinout. Figures showing HW connection of PIC and LCD are given at the end of the chapter.

**Note:** Be sure to designate port with LCD as output, before using any of the following library functions.

### Library Routines

Lcd\_Custom\_Config  
Lcd\_Custom\_Out  
Lcd\_Custom\_Out\_Cp  
Lcd\_Custom\_Chrc  
Lcd\_Custom\_Chrc\_Cp  
Lcd\_Custom\_Cmd

### Lcd\_Custom\_Config

Prototype	<code>sub procedure Lcd_Custom_Config(dim byref data_port as byte, dim D7, D6, D5, D4 as byte, dim byref ctrl_port as byte, dim RS, WR, EN as byte)</code>
Description	Initializes LCD data port and control port with pin settings you specify.
Example	<code>Lcd_Custom_Config(PORTD,3,2,1,0,PORTB,2,3,4)</code>

### Lcd\_Custom\_Out

Prototype	<code>sub procedure Lcd_Custom_Out(dim row, col as byte, dim byref text as char[255])</code>
Description	Prints text on LCD at specified row and column (parameters row and col). Both string variables and literals can be passed as text.
Requires	Port with LCD must be initialized. See <b>Lcd_Custom_Config</b> .
Example	Print "Hello!" on LCD at line 1, char 3:  <code>Lcd_Custom_Out(1, 3, "Hello!")</code>



## Lcd\_Custom\_Out\_Cp

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Lcd_Custom_Out_Cp( <b>dim byref</b> text <b>as char</b> [255])
<b>Description</b>	Prints text on LCD at current cursor position. Both string variables and literals can be passed as text.
<b>Requires</b>	Port with LCD must be initialized. See <b>Lcd_Custom_Config</b> .
<b>Example</b>	Print "Here!" at current cursor position:  Lcd_Custom_Out_Cp("Here!")

## Lcd\_Custom\_Chrc

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Lcd_Custom_Chrc( <b>dim</b> row, col, character <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Prints character on LCD at specified row and column (parameters row and col). Both variables and literals can be passed as character.
<b>Requires</b>	Port with LCD must be initialized. See <b>Lcd_Custom_Config</b> .
<b>Example</b>	Print "i" on LCD at line 2, char 3:  Lcd_Custom_Chrc(2, 3, "i")

## Lcd\_Custom\_Chrc\_Cp

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Lcd_Custom_Chrc_Cp( <b>dim</b> character <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Prints character on LCD at current cursor position. Both variables and literals can be passed as character.
<b>Requires</b>	Port with LCD must be initialized. See <b>Lcd_Custom_Config</b> .
<b>Example</b>	Print "e" at current cursor position:  Lcd_Custom_Chrc_Cp("e")

## Lcd\_Custom\_Cmd

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Lcd_Custom_Cmd( <b>dim</b> out_char <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Sends command to LCD. You can pass one of the predefined constants to the function. The complete list of available commands is below.
<b>Requires</b>	Port with LCD must be initialized. See <b>Lcd_Custom_Config</b> .
<b>Example</b>	Clear LCD display:  Lcd_Custom_Cmd(Lcd_Clear)

## LCD Commands

LCD Command	Purpose
LCD_FIRST_ROW	Move cursor to 1st row
LCD_SECOND_ROW	Move cursor to 2nd row
LCD_THIRD_ROW	Move cursor to 3rd row
LCD_FOURTH_ROW	Move cursor to 4th row
LCD_CLEAR	Clear display
LCD_RETURN_HOME	Return cursor to home position, returns a shifted display to original position. Display data RAM is unaffected.
LCD_CURSOR_OFF	Turn off cursor
LCD_UNDERLINE_ON	Underline cursor on
LCD_BLINK_CURSOR_ON	Blink cursor on
LCD_MOVE_CURSOR_LEFT	Move cursor left without changing display data RAM
LCD_MOVE_CURSOR_RIGHT	Move cursor right without changing display data RAM
LCD_TURN_ON	Turn LCD display on
LCD_TURN_OFF	Turn LCD display off
LCD_SHIFT_LEFT	Shift display left without changing display data RAM
LCD_SHIFT_RIGHT	Shift display right without changing display data RAM

## Library Example

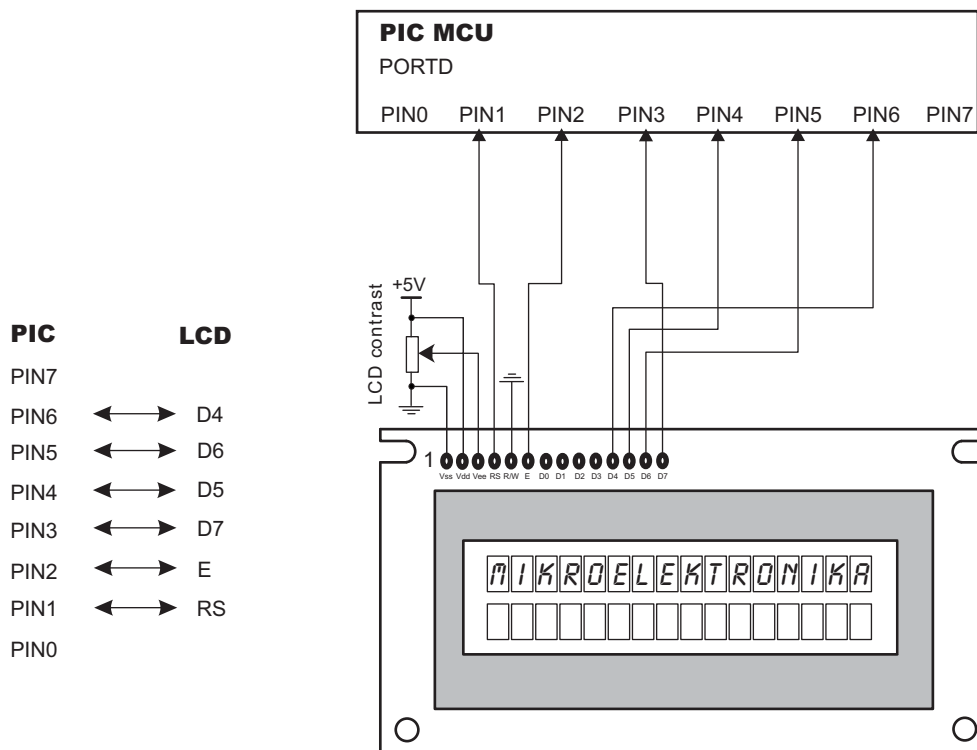
```

program LCD_custom_test

main:
    Lcd_Custom_Config(PORTD,3,5,4,6,PORTD,1,0,2)
    Lcd_Custom_Cmd(LCD_CLEAR)
    Lcd_Custom_Cmd(LCD_CURSOR_OFF)
    Lcd_Custom_Out(1,1,"mikroElektronika")
    Lcd_Custom_Out(2,1,"LCD Custom Test ")
end.

```

## Hardware Connection



## LCD Library (8-bit interface)

mikroBasic provides a library for communicating with commonly used 8-bit interface LCD (with Hitachi HD44780 controller). Figures showing HW connection of PIC and LCD are given at the end of the chapter.

**Note:** Be sure to designate Control and Data ports with LCD as output, before using any of the following functions.

### Library Routines

```
Lcd8_Config
Lcd8_Init
Lcd8_Out
Lcd8_Out_Cp
Lcd8_Chr
Lcd8_Chr_Cp
Lcd8_Cmd
```

### Lcd8\_Config

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Lcd8_Config( <b>dim byref</b> ctrlport, dataport <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim</b> RS, EN, WR, D7, D6, D5, D4, D3, D2, D1, D0 <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Initializes LCD at Control port (ctrlport) and Data port (dataport) with pin settings you specify: Parameters RS, EN, and WR need to be in range 0–7; Parameters D7 .. D0 need to be a combination of values 0–7 (e.g. 3,6,5,0,7,2,1,4).
<b>Example</b>	Lcd8_Config(PORTC, PORTD, 0, 1, 2, 6, 5, 4, 3, 7, 1, 2, 0)

## Lcd8\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Lcd8_Init( <b>dim byref</b> ctrlport, dataport <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Initializes LCD at Control port (ctrlport) and Data port (dataport) with default pin settings (see the connection scheme at the end of the chapter):</p> <p>E -&gt; ctrlport.3, RS -&gt; ctrlport.2, R/W -&gt; ctrlport.0, D7 -&gt; dataport.7, D6 -&gt; dataport.6, D5 -&gt; dataport.5, D4 -&gt; dataport.4, D3 -&gt; dataport.3, D2 -&gt; dataport.2, D1 -&gt; dataport.1, D0 -&gt; dataport.0</p>
<b>Example</b>	Lcd8_Init(PORTB, PORTC)

## Lcd8\_Out

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Lcd8_Out( <b>dim</b> row, col <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim byref</b> text <b>as char</b> [255])
<b>Description</b>	Prints text on LCD at specified row and column (parameter row and col). Both string variables and literals can be passed as text.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports with LCD must be initialized. See Lcd8_Config or Lcd8_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Lcd8_Out(1, 3, "Hello!") ' Print "Hello!" at line 1, char 3

## Lcd8\_Out\_Cp

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Lcd8_Out_Cp( <b>dim byref</b> text <b>as char</b> [255])
<b>Description</b>	Prints text on LCD at current cursor position. Both string variables and literals can be passed as text.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports with LCD must be initialized. See Lcd8_Config or Lcd8_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Lcd8_Out_Cp("Here!") ' Print "Here!" at current cursor position

## Lcd8\_Ch

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>void</b> Lcd8_Ch( <b>char</b> row, <b>char</b> col, <b>char</b> character);
<b>Description</b>	Prints character on LCD at specified row and column (parameters row and col). Both variables and literals can be passed as character.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports with LCD must be initialized. See Lcd8_Config or Lcd8_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Lcd8_Out(2, 3, "i") <i>' Print "i" at line 2, char 3</i>

## Lcd8\_Ch\_Cp

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Lcd8_Ch_Cp( <b>dim</b> character <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Prints character on LCD at current cursor position. Both variables and literals can be passed as character.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports with LCD must be initialized. See Lcd8_Config or Lcd8_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Lcd8_Ch_Cp("e") <i>' Print "e" at current cursor position</i>

## Lcd8\_Cmd

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Lcd8_Cmd( <b>dim</b> command <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Sends command to LCD. You can pass one of the predefined constants to the function. The complete list of available commands is on the page 140.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports with LCD must be initialized. See Lcd8_Config or Lcd8_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Lcd8_Cmd(LCD_CLEAR) <i>' Clear LCD display</i>

## Library Example (default pin settings)

```

program Lcd8_default_test
dim text as char[20]

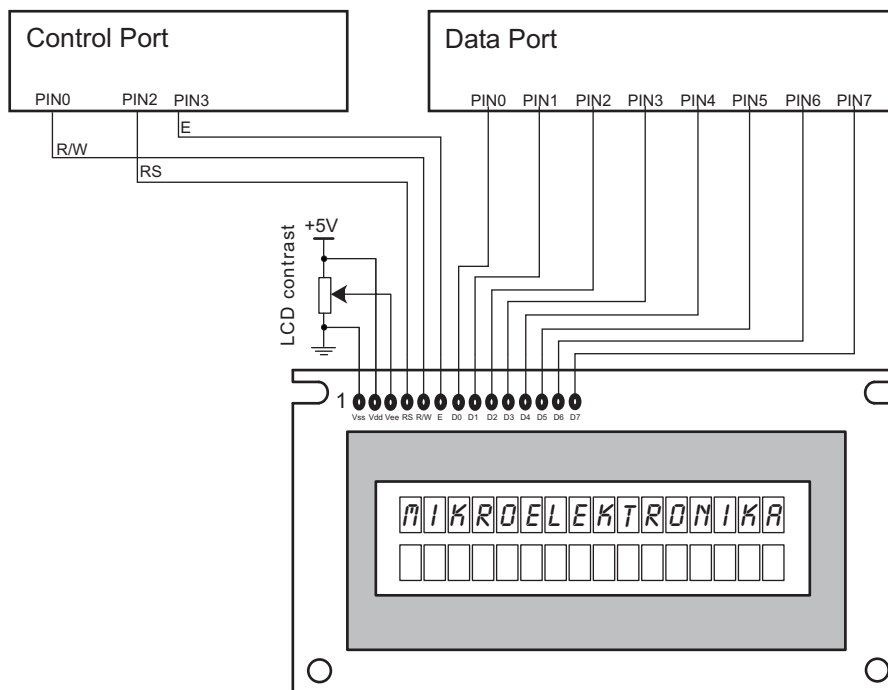
main:
    TRISB = 0           ' PORTB is output
    TRISC = 0           ' PORTC is output
    Lcd8_Init(PORTB, PORTC) ' Initialize LCD at PORTB and PORTC
    Lcd8_Cmd(LCD_CURSOR_OFF) ' Turn off cursor
    text = "mikroElektronika"
    Lcd8_Out(1, 1, text)  ' Print text at LCD
end.

```

## Hardware Connection

### PIC MCU

any port (with 8 pins)





## Library Example (custom pin settings)

```

program Lcd8_custom_test
dim text as char[20]

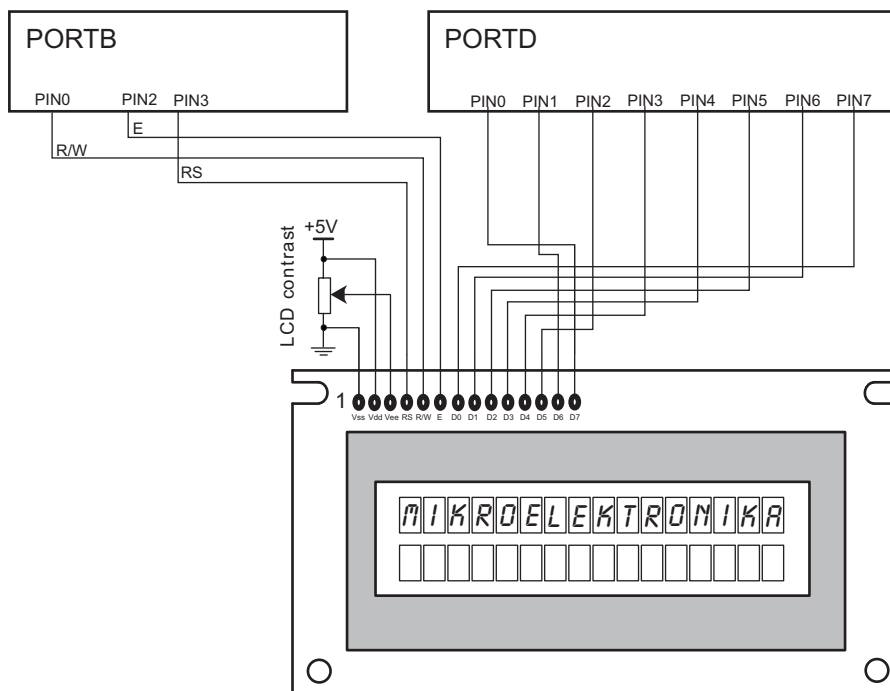
main:
    TRISB = 0                ' PORTB is output
    TRISD = 0                ' PORTD is output

    ' Initialize LCD at PORTB and PORTD with custom pin settings
    Lcd8_Config(PORTB,PORTD,3,2,0,0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7)

    Lcd8_Cmd(Lcd_CURSOR_OFF) ' Turn off cursor
    text = "mikroElektronika"
    Lcd8_Out(1, 1, text)      ' Print text at LCD
end.

```

## Hardware Connection



## GLCD Library

mikroBasic provides a library for drawing and writing on Graphic LCD. These routines work with commonly used GLCD 128x64, and work only with the PIC18 family.

**Note:** Be sure to designate port with GLCD as output, before using any of the following library procedures or functions.

### Library Routines

Basic routines:

Glcd\_Init  
Glcd\_Disable  
Glcd\_Set\_Side  
Glcd\_Set\_Page  
Glcd\_Set\_X  
Glcd\_Read\_Data  
Glcd\_Write\_Data

Advanced routines:

Glcd\_Fill  
Glcd\_Dot  
Glcd\_Line  
Glcd\_V\_Line  
Glcd\_H\_Line  
Glcd\_Rectangle  
Glcd\_Box  
Glcd\_Circle  
Glcd\_Set\_Font  
Glcd\_Write\_Char  
Glcd\_Write\_Text  
Glcd\_Image  
Glcd\_Partial\_Image

## Glcd\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_Init( <b>dim byref</b> ctrlport <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim</b> cs1, cs2, rs, rw, rst, en <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim byref</b> dataport <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Initializes GLCD at lower byte of data_port with pin settings you specify. Parameters cs1, cs2, rs, rw, rst, and en can be pins of any available port.</p> <p>This procedure needs to be called before using other routines of GLCD library.</p>
<b>Example</b>	Glcd_Init(PORTB, 2, 0, 3, 5, 7, 1, PORTC)

## Glcd\_Disable

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_Disable
<b>Description</b>	Routine disables the device and frees the data line for other devices. To enable the device again, call any of the library routines; no special command is required.
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Glcd_Disable

## Glcd\_Set\_Side

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_Set_Side( <b>dim</b> x <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Selects side of GLCD, left or right. Parameter x specifies the side: values from 0 to 63 specify the left side, and values higher than 64 specify the right side. Use the functions Glcd_Set_Side, Glcd_Set_X, and Glcd_Set_Page to specify an exact position on GLCD. Then, you can use Glcd_Write_Data or Glcd_Read_Data on that location.
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Glcd_Set_Side(0)

## Glcd\_Set\_Page

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_Set_Page( <b>dim</b> page <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Selects page of GLCD, technically a line on display; parameter page can be 0..7.
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Glcd_Set_Page(5)

## Glcd\_Set\_X

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_Set_X( <b>dim</b> x <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Positions to x dots from the left border of GLCD within the given page.
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Glcd_Set_X(25)

## Glcd\_Read\_Data

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Glcd_Read_Data <b>as</b> byte
<b>Returns</b>	One word from the GLCD memory.
<b>Description</b>	Reads data from from the current location of GLCD memory. Use the functions Glcd_Set_Side, Glcd_Set_X, and Glcd_Set_Page to specify an exact position on GLCD. Then, you can use Glcd_Write_Data or Glcd_Read_Data on that location.
<b>Requires</b>	Reads data from from the current location of GLCD memory.
<b>Example</b>	tmp = Glcd_Read_Data()

## Glcd\_Write\_Data

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_Write_Data( <b>dim</b> data <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Writes data to the current location in GLCD memory and moves to the next location.
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Glcd_Write_Data(data)

## Glcd\_Fill

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_Fill( <b>dim</b> pattern <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Fills the GLCD memory with byte pattern. To clear the GLCD screen, use Glcd_Fill(0); to fill the screen completely, use Glcd_Fill(\$FF).
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Glcd_Fill(0)    ' Clear screen

## Glcd\_Dot

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_Dot( <b>dim</b> x, y, color <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Draws a dot on the GLCD at coordinates (x, y). Parameter color determines the dot state: 0 clears dot, 1 puts a dot, and 2 inverts dot state.
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Glcd_Dot(0, 0, 2)    ' Invert the dot in the upper left corner

## Glcd\_Line

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_Line( <b>dim</b> x1, y1, x2, y2, color <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Draws a line on the GLCD from (x1, y1) to (x2, y2). Parameter color determines the dot state: 0 draws an empty line (clear dots), 1 draws a full line (put dots), and 2 draws a “smart” line (invert each dot).
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Glcd_Line(0, 63, 50, 0, 2)

## Glcd\_V\_Line

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_V_Line( <b>dim</b> y1, y2, x, color <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Similar to Glcd_Line, draws a vertical line on the GLCD from (x, y1) to (x, y2).
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Glcd_V_Line(0, 63, 0, 1)

## Glcd\_H\_Line

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_H_Line( <b>dim</b> x1, x2, y, color <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Similar to Glcd_Line, draws a horizontal line on the GLCD from (x1, y) to (x2, y).
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Glcd_H_Line(0, 127, 0, 1)

## Glcd\_Rectangle

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_Rectangle( <b>dim</b> x1, y1, x2, y2, color <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Draws a rectangle on the GLCD. Parameters (x1, y1) set the upper left corner, (x2, y2) set the bottom right corner. Parameter color defines the border: 0 draws an empty border (clear dots), 1 draws a solid border (put dots), and 2 draws a “smart” border (invert each dot).
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Glcd_Rectangle(10, 0, 30, 35, 1)

## Glcd\_Box

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_Box( <b>dim</b> x1, y1, x2, y2, color <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Draws a box on the GLCD. Parameters (x1, y1) set the upper left corner, (x2, y2) set the bottom right corner. Parameter color defines the fill: 0 draws a white box (clear dots), 1 draws a full box (put dots), and 2 draws an inverted box (invert each dot).
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Glcd_Box(10, 0, 30, 35, 1)

## Glcd\_Circle

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_Circle( <b>dim</b> x, y, radius, color <b>as</b> integer)
<b>Description</b>	Draws a circle on the GLCD, centered at (x, y) with radius. Parameter color defines the circle line: 0 draws an empty line (clear dots), 1 draws a solid line (put dots), and 2 draws a “smart” line (invert each dot).
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Glcd_Circle(63, 31, 25)

## Glcd\_Set\_Font

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_Set_Font( <b>dim</b> font_address <b>as</b> longint, <b>dim</b> font_width, font_height <b>as</b> byte, <b>dim</b> font_offset <b>as</b> word)
<b>Description</b>	<p>Sets the font for text display routines, Glcd_Write_Char and Glcd_Write_Text. Font needs to be formatted as an array of byte. Parameter font_address specifies the address of the font; you can pass a font name with the @ operator. Parameters font_width and font_height specify the width and height of characters in dots. Font width should not exceed 128 dots, and font height should not exceed 8 dots. Parameter font_offset determines the ASCII character from which the supplied font starts. Demo fonts supplied with the library have an offset of 32, which means that they start with space.</p> <p>If no font is specified, Glcd_Write_Char and Glcd_Write_Text will use the default 5x8 font supplied with the library. You can create your own fonts by following the guidelines given in the file "GLCD_FonTS.pas". This file contains the default fonts for GLCD, and is located in your installation folder, "Extra Examples" &gt; "GLCD".</p>
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	<i>' Use the custom 5x7 font "myfont" which starts with space (32):</i> Glcd_Set_Font(@myfont, 5, 7, 32)

## Glcd\_Write\_Char

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_Write_Char( <b>dim</b> character, x, page, color <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	<p>Prints character at page (one of 8 GLCD lines, 0..7), x dots away from the left border of display. Parameter color defines the "fill": 0 writes a "white" letter (clear dots), 1 writes a solid letter (put dots), and 2 writes a "smart" letter (invert each dot).</p> <p>Use routine Glcd_Set_Font to specify font, or the default 5x7 font (included with the library) will be used.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized, see Glcd_Init. Use the Glcd_Set_Font to specify the font for display; if no font is specified, the default 5x8 font supplied with the library will be used.
<b>Example</b>	Glcd_Write_Char("C", 0, 0, 1)



## Glcd\_Write\_Text

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_Write_Text( <b>dim</b> text <b>as</b> string[20], <b>dim</b> x, page, color <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	<p>Prints text at page (one of 8 GLCD lines, 0..7), x dots away from the left border of display. Parameter color defines the “fill”: 0 prints a “white” letters (clear dots), 1 prints solid letters (put dots), and 2 prints “smart” letters (invert each dot).</p> <p>Use routine Glcd_Set_Font to specify font, or the default 5x7 font (included with the library) will be used.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized, see Glcd_Init. Use the Glcd_Set_Font to specify the font for display; if no font is specified, the default 5x8 font supplied with the library will be used.
<b>Example</b>	Glcd_Write_Text("Hello world!", 0, 0, 1)

## Glcd\_Image

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_Image( <b>dim</b> image <b>as</b> byte[1024])
<b>Description</b>	Displays bitmap image on the GLCD. Parameter image should be formatted as an array of 1024 bytes. Use the mikroBasic’s integrated Bitmap-to-LCD editor (menu option Tools > Graphic LCD Editor) to convert image to a constant array suitable for display on GLCD.
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Glcd_Image(my_image)

## Glcd\_Partial\_Image

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Glcd_Partial_Image( <b>dim</b> x1, y1, x2, y2, color <b>as</b> <b>byte</b> , <b>dim</b> image <b>as</b> <b>byte</b> [1024])
<b>Description</b>	Displays partial bitmap image on the GLCD. Parameter <code>image</code> should be formatted as an array of 1024 bytes. Parameters (x1, y1) set the upper left corner, and (x2, y2) set the lower right corner of the clip. Parameter <code>color</code> defines the fill: 0 draws a “white” image (clear dots), 1 draws a “black” image (put dots), and 2 draws an inverted image (invert each dot). Use the mikroBasic’s integrated Bitmap-to-LCD editor (menu option Tools > Graphic LCD Editor) to convert image to a constant array suitable for display on GLCD.
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See <code>Glcd_Init</code> .
<b>Example</b>	<code>Glcd_Partial_Image(0, 0, 32, 64, 1, my_image)</code>

## Library Example

The following drawing demo tests advanced routines of GLCD library.

```
program Glcd_Test

main:
  Glcd_Init(PORTB, 2, 0, 3, 5, 7, 1, PORTD)

  ' Set font for displaying text
  Glcd_Set_Font(@FontSystem5x8, 5, 8, 32)

do

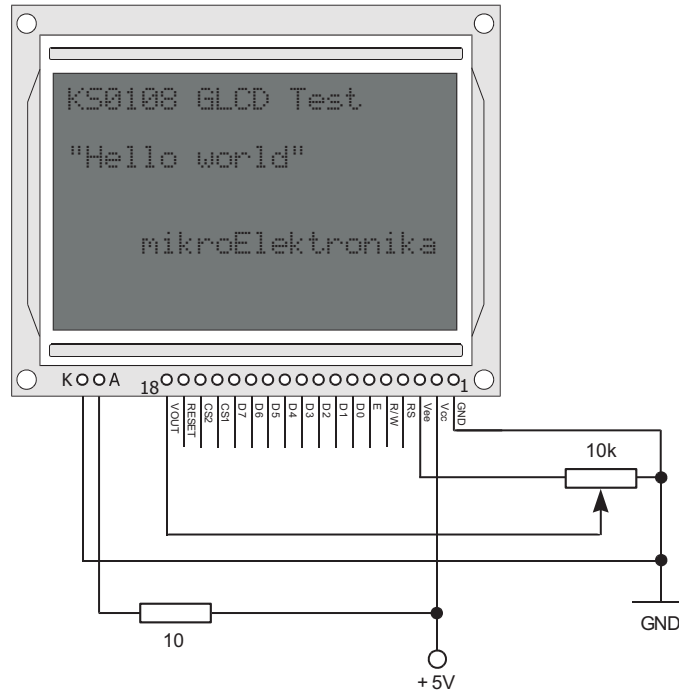
  ' Draw circles
  Glcd_Fill(0) ' Clear screen
  Glcd_Write_Text("Circles", 0, 0, 1)
  j = 4
  while j < 31
    Glcd_Circle(63, 31, j, 2)
    j = j + 4
  wend
  Delay_ms(4000)

  ' Draw boxes
  Glcd_Fill(0) ' Clear screen
  Glcd_Write_Text("Rectangles", 0, 0, 1)
  j = 0
  while j < 31
    Glcd_Box(j, 0, j + 20, j + 25, 2)
    j = j + 4
  wend
  Delay_ms(4000)

  ' Draw Lines
  Glcd_Fill(0) ' Clear screen
  Glcd_Write_Text("Lines", 0, 0, 1)
  for j = 0 to 15
    k = j*4 + 3
    Glcd_Line(0, 0, 127, k, 2)
  next j
  Delay_ms(4000)
loop until FALSE

end.
```

## Hardware Connection



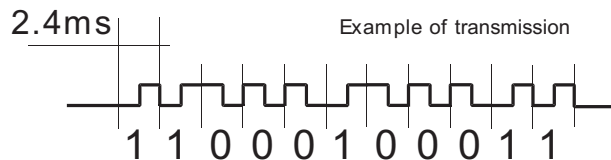
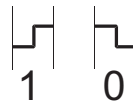
## Manchester Code Library

mikroBasic provides a library for handling Manchester coded signals. Manchester code is a code in which data and clock signals are combined to form a single self-synchronizing data stream; each encoded bit contains a transition at the midpoint of a bit period, the direction of transition determines whether the bit is a 0 or a 1; second half is the true bit value and the first half is the complement of the true bit value (as shown in the figure below).

Manchester RF\_Send\_Byte format

St1	St2	Ctr	B7	B6	B5	B4	B3	B2	B1	B0
-----	-----	-----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----

Bi-phase coding



**Notes:** Manchester receive routines are blocking calls (Man\_Receive\_Config, Man\_Receive\_Init, Man\_Receive). This means that PIC will wait until the task is performed (e.g. byte is received, synchronization achieved, etc). Routines for receiving are limited to a baud rate scope from 340 ~ 560 bps.

## Library Routines

Man\_Receive\_Config  
Man\_Receive\_Init  
Man\_Receive  
Man\_Send\_Config  
Man\_Send\_Init  
Man\_Send  
Man\_Synchro

## Man\_Receive\_Config

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Man_Receive_Config( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim</b> rxpin <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	The procedure prepares PIC for receiving signal. You need to specify the port and rxpin (0–7) of input signal. In case of multiple errors on reception, you should call Man_Receive_Init once again to enable synchronization.
<b>Example</b>	Man_Receive_Config(PORTD, 6)

## Man\_Receive\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Man_Receive_Init( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	The procedure prepares PIC for receiving signal. You need to specify the port; rxpin is pin 6 by default. In case of multiple errors on reception, you should call Man_Receive_Init once again to enable synchronization.
<b>Example</b>	Man_Receive_Init(PORTD)

## Man\_Receive

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Man_Receive( <b>dim byref</b> error <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns one byte from signal.
<b>Description</b>	procedure extracts one byte from signal. If signal format does not match the expected, error flag will be set to 255.
<b>Requires</b>	To use this function, you must first prepare the PIC for receiving. See Man_Receive_Config or Man_Receive_Init.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>temp = Man_Receive(error) <b>if</b> error = true <b>then</b> ... ' error handling</pre>

## Man\_Send\_Config

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Man_Send_Config( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim</b> txpin <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	The function prepares PIC for sending signal. You need to specify port and txpin (0–7) for outgoing signal. Baud rate is const 500 bps.
<b>Example</b>	Man_Send_Config(PORTD, 0)

## Man\_Send\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Man_Send_Init( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	The function prepares PIC for sending signal. You need to specify port for outgoing signal; txpin is pin 0 by default. Baud rate is const 500 bps.
<b>Example</b>	Man_Send_Init(PORTD)

## Man\_Send

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Man_Send( <b>dim</b> data <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Sends one byte (data).
<b>Requires</b>	To use this function, you must first prepare the PIC for sending. See Man_Send_Config or Man_Send_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Man_Send(msg)

## Man\_Synchro

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Man_Synchro <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Half of the manchester bit length, given in multiples of 10us.
<b>Description</b>	This function returns half of the manchester bit length. The length is given in multiples of 10us. It is assumed that one bit lasts no more than $255 \cdot 10\text{us} = 2550\text{ us}$ .
<b>Requires</b>	To use this function, you must first prepare the PIC for sending. See Man_Send_Config or Man_Send_Init.
<b>Example</b>	man_len = Man_Synchro

## Library Example

The following example transmits message in Manchester code. Message is delimited by markers \$0B and \$0E.

```

program RF_TX
dim i as byte
dim msg as string[20]

main:
    msg = "mikroElektronika"
    PORTB = 0                                ' Initialize port
    TRISB = %00001110
    ClearBit(INTCON, GIE)                    ' Disable interrupts
    Man_Send_Init(PORTB)                     ' Initialize Manchester sender
    while TRUE
        Man_Send($0B)                        ' Send start marker
        Delay_ms(100)                        ' Wait for a while
        for i = 1 to Strlen(msg)
            Man_Send(msg[i])                 ' Send char
            Delay_ms(90)
        next i
        Man_Send($0E)                        ' Send end marker
        Delay_ms(1000)
    wend
end.

```



The following code receives messages sent by the previous example, and prints it on LCD. Each error in the received string will be indicated by a quotation mark.

```

program RRX
dim error, ErrorCount, temp as byte

main:
    ErrorCount = 0
    TRISB      = 0
    CMCON = 7
    ' VRCON = 0                      ' Uncomment the line for PIC16
    Lcd_Init(PORTB)                  ' Initialize LCD on PORTB
    Lcd_Cmd(LCD_CLEAR)
    Man_Receive_Config(PORTA,3)      ' Configure and synchronize receiver

while true do
    Lcd_Cmd(Lcd_FIRST_ROW)

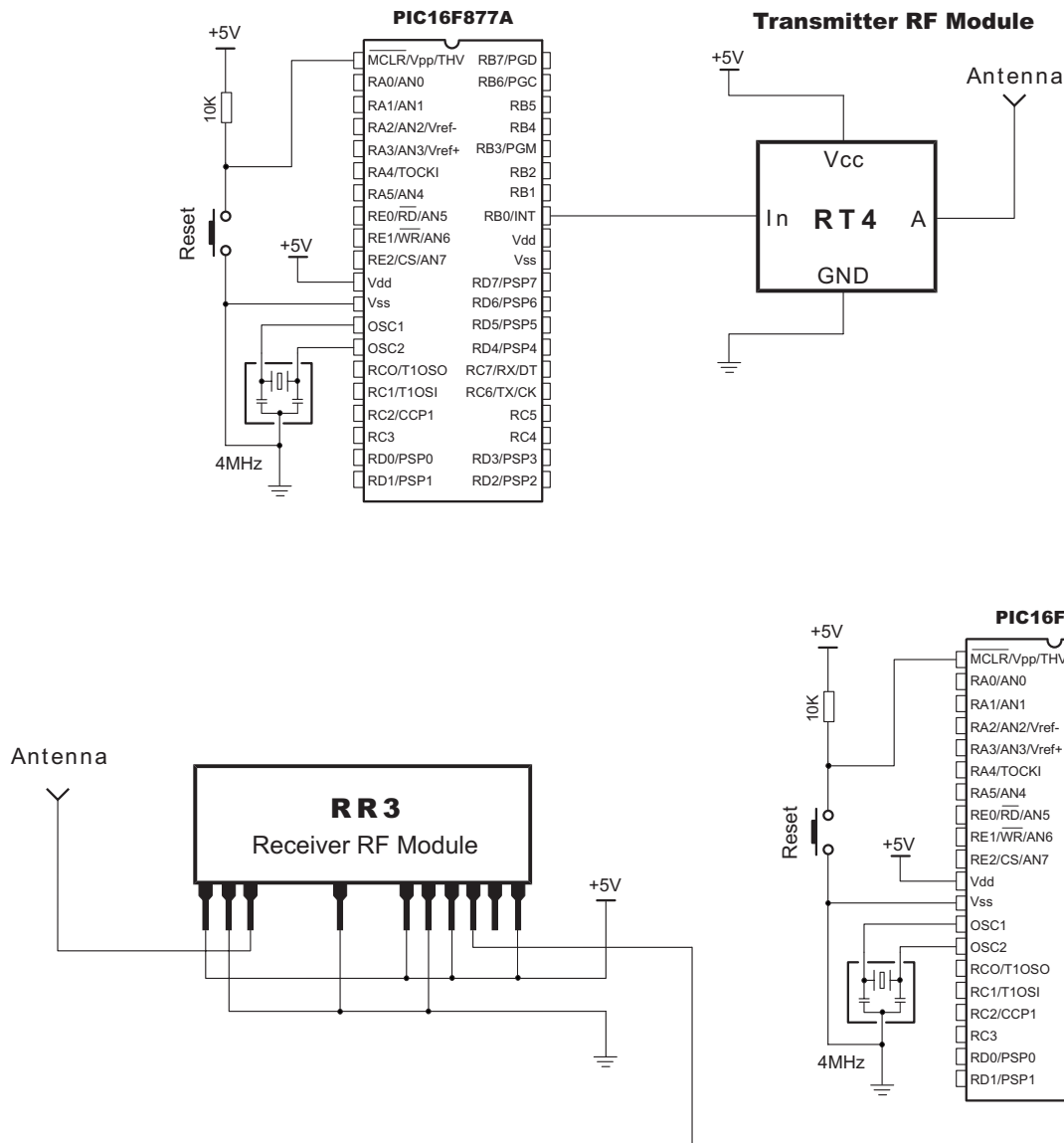
    while true do                  ' Wait for the start marker
        temp = Man_Receive(error)
        if temp = $0B then
            break
        end if                    ' We got the starting sequence
        if error then              ' Exit so we do not loop forever
            break
        end if
    wend

    do
        temp = Man_Receive(error)  ' Attempt byte receive
        if error = true then
            Lcd_Chrcp(63)           ' ASCII for '?'
            Inc(ErrorCount)
            if ErrorCount > 20 then
                Man_Receive_Init(PORTA)
                ' alternative:
                ' temp = Man_Synchro
                ErrorCount = 0
            end if

            else
                if temp <> $0E then    ' Don't print the end marker on LCD
                    Lcd_Chrcp(temp)
                end if
                Delay_ms(20)
            end if
        loop until temp = $0E
    wend
end.

```

## Hardware Connection



## Multi Media Card Library

The Multi Media Card (MMC) is a flash memory card standard. MMC cards are currently available in sizes up to and including 1 GB, and are used in cell phones, mp3 players, digital cameras, and PDA's.

mikroBasic provides a library for accessing data on Multi Media Card via SPI communication. This library also supports SD(Secure Digital) memory cards.

Secure Digital (SD) is a flash memory card standard, based on the older Multi Media Card (MMC) format. SD cards are currently available in sizes of up to and including 2 GB, and are used in cell phones, mp3 players, digital cameras.

### Notes:

- Library works with PIC18 family only;
- Library functions create and read files from the root directory only;
- Library functions populate both FAT1 and FAT2 tables when writing to files, but the file data is being read from the FAT1 table only; i.e. there is no recovery if FAT1 table is corrupted.

## Library Routines

```
Mmc_Init
Mmc_Read_Sector
Mmc_Write_Sector
Mmc_Read_Cid
Mmc_Read_Csd

Mmc_Fat_Init
Mmc_Fat_Assign
Mmc_Fat_Reset
Mmc_Fat_Rewrite
Mmc_Fat_Append
Mmc_Fat_Read
Mmc_Fat_Write
Mmc_Fat_Set_File_Date
Mmc_Fat_Get_File_Date
Mmc_Fat_Get_File_Size
Mmc_Fat_Get_Swap_File
```

## Mmc\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Mmc_Init( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim pin as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns 0 if MMC card is present and successfully initialized, otherwise returns 1.
<b>Description</b>	Initializes hardware SPI communication; parameters <code>port</code> and <code>pin</code> designate the CS line used in the communication (parameter <code>pin</code> should be 0..7). The function returns 0 if MMC card is present and successfully initialized, otherwise returns 1. <code>Mmc_Init</code> needs to be called before using other functions of this library.
<b>Example</b>	<code>error = Mmc_Init(PORTC, 2) ' Init with CS line at RC2</code>

## Mmc\_Read\_Sector

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Mmc_Read_Sector( <b>dim sector as longint</b> , <b>dim byref</b> data <b>as byte[512]</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns 0 if read was successful, or 1 if an error occurred.
<b>Description</b>	Function reads one sector (512 bytes) from MMC card at sector address <code>sector</code> . Read data is stored in the array <code>data</code> . Function returns 0 if read was successful, or 1 if an error occurred.
<b>Requires</b>	Library needs to be initialized, see <code>Mmc_Init</code> .
<b>Example</b>	<code>error = Mmc_Read_Sector(sector, data)</code>

## Mmc\_Write\_Sector

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Mmc_Write_Sector( <b>dim</b> sector <b>as</b> longint, <b>dim</b> byref data <b>as</b> byte[512]) <b>as</b> byte
<b>Returns</b>	Returns 0 if write was successful; returns 1 if there was an error in sending write command; returns 2 if there was an error in writing.
<b>Description</b>	Function writes 512 bytes of data to MMC card at sector address sector. Function returns 0 if write was successful, or 1 if there was an error in sending write command, or 2 if there was an error in writing.
<b>Requires</b>	Library needs to be initialized, see Mmc_Init.
<b>Example</b>	error = Mmc_Write_Sector(sector, data)

## Mmc\_Read\_Cid

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Mmc_Read_Cid( <b>dim</b> byref data_for_registers <b>as</b> byte[512]) <b>as</b> byte
<b>Returns</b>	Returns 0 if read was successful, or 1 if an error occurred.
<b>Description</b>	Function reads CID register and returns 16 bytes of content into data_for_registers.
<b>Requires</b>	Library needs to be initialized, see Mmc_Init.
<b>Example</b>	error = Mmc_Read_Cid(data)

## Mmc\_Read\_Csd

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Mmc_Read_Csd( <b>dim byref</b> data_for_registers <b>as byte</b> [512]) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns 0 if read was successful, or 1 if an error occurred.
<b>Description</b>	Function reads CSD register and returns 16 bytes of content into data_for_registers.
<b>Requires</b>	Library needs to be initialized, see Mmc_Init.
<b>Example</b>	error = Mmc_Read_Csd(data)

## Mmc\_Fat\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Mmc_Fat_Init( <b>dim byref</b> mmcport <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim</b> mmcpin <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns 0 if MMC card is present and successfully initialized, otherwise returns 1.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Initializes hardware SPI communication; designated CS line for communication is given by parameters mmcport and mmcpin. The function returns a non-zero value if MMC card is present and successfully initialized, otherwise it returns 0.</p> <p>This function needs to be called before using other functions of MMC FAT library.</p>
<b>Example</b>	success = Mmc_Fat_Init(PORTC, 2)

## Mmc\_Fat\_Assign

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Mmc_Fat_Assign( <b>dim byref</b> filename <b>as char</b> [11], <b>dim</b> create_file <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	The function returns non-zero value if the file that is specified by filename was been found or newly created, otherwise it returns 0.
<b>Description</b>	<p>This function designates (“assigns”) the file we’ll be working with. The function looks for the file specified by the filename in the root directory. If the file is found, routine will initialize it by getting its start sector, size, etc. If the file is not found, an empty file will be created with the given name, if allowed.</p> <p>Whether the new file will be created or not is controlled by the parameter create_file - setting it to zero will prevent creation of new file, while giving it any non-zero value will do the opposite.</p> <p>The filename must be 8 + 3 characters in uppercase.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	Library needs to be initialized; see Mmc_Fat_Init.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>' Assign the file "EXAMPLE1.TXT" in the root directory of MMC. ' If the file is not found, routine will create one. ' In this case, function return value will allways be non-zero Mmc_Fat_Assign("EXAMPLE1TXT", 1)  ' Assign the file "EXAMPLE2.TXT" in the root directory of MMC. ' If the file is not found, routine will NOT create new one. file_found = Mmc_Fat_Assign("EXAMPLE2TXT", 0)</pre>

## Mmc\_Fat\_Reset

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Mmc_Fat_Reset ( <b>dim byref</b> size <b>as longint</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Procedure resets the file pointer (moves it to the start of the file) of the assigned file, so that the file can be read. Parameter <code>size</code> stores the size of the assigned file, in bytes.
<b>Requires</b>	The file must be assigned, see <code>Mmc_Fat_Assign</code> .
<b>Example</b>	<code>Mmc_Fat_Reset (size)</code>

## Mmc\_Fat\_Rewrite

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Mmc_Fat_Rewrite
<b>Description</b>	Procedure resets the file pointer and clears the assigned file, so that new data can be written into the file.
<b>Requires</b>	The file must be assigned, see <code>Mmc_Fat_Assign</code> .
<b>Example</b>	<code>Mmc_Fat_Rewrite</code>

## Mmc\_Fat\_Append

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Mmc_Fat_Append
<b>Description</b>	The procedure moves the file pointer to the end of the assigned file, so that data can be appended to the file.
<b>Requires</b>	The file must be assigned, see <code>Mmc_Fat_Assign</code> .
<b>Example</b>	<code>Mmc_Fat_Append</code>



## Mmc\_Fat\_Read

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Mmc_Fat_Read( <b>dim byref</b> data <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Procedure reads the byte at which the file pointer points to and stores data into parameter data. The file pointer automatically increments with each call of Mmc_Fat_Read.
<b>Requires</b>	The file must be assigned, see Mmc_Fat_Assign. Also, file pointer must be initialized; see Mmc_Fat_Reset.
<b>Example</b>	Mmc_Fat_Read(mydata)

## Mmc\_Fat\_Write

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Mmc_Fat_Write( <b>dim byref</b> fdata <b>as char</b> [512], <b>dim datalen as word</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Procedure writes a chunk of bytes (fdata) to the currently assigned file, at the position of the file pointer.
<b>Requires</b>	The file must be assigned, see Mmc_Fat_Assign. Also, file pointer must be initialized; see Mmc_Fat_Append or Mmc_Fat_Rewrite.
<b>Example</b>	Mmc_Fat_Write(txt,255) Mmc_Fat_Write("Hello world",255)

## Mmc\_Fat\_Set\_File\_Date

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Mmc_Fat_Set_File_Date( <b>dim</b> year <b>as word</b> , <b>dim</b> month, day, hours, min, sec <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Writes system timestamp to a file. Use this routine before each writing to file; otherwise, the file will be appended an unknown timestamp.
<b>Requires</b>	File pointer must be initialized; see Mmc_Fat_Assign and Mmc_Fat_Reset.
<b>Example</b>	' April 1st 2005, 18:07:00 Mmc_Fat_Set_File_Date(2005, 4, 1, 18, 7, 0)

## Mmc\_Fat\_Get\_File\_Date

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Mmc_Fat_Get_File_Date( <b>dim byref</b> year <b>as word</b> , <b>dim byref</b> month, day, hours, min, sec <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Retrieves date and time for the currently selected file. Seconds are not being retrieved since they are written in 2-sec increments.
<b>Requires</b>	The file must be assigned, see Mmc_Fat_Assign.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>' get Date/time of file dim yr as word dim mnth, dat, hrs, mins as byte ... file_Name = "MYFILEABTXT" Mmc_Fat_Assign(file_Name) Mmc_Fat_Get_File_Date(yr, mnth, dat, hrs, mins)</pre>

## Mmc\_Fat\_Get\_File\_Size

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Mmc_Fat_Get_File_Size <b>as longint</b>
<b>Returns</b>	The size of active file (in bytes).
<b>Description</b>	Retrieves size for currently selected file.
<b>Requires</b>	The file must be assigned, see Mmc_Fat_Assign.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>' get file size dim yr as word dim mnth, dat, hrs, mins as byte ... file_name = "MYFILEXXTXT" Mmc_Fat_Assign(file_name) mmc_size = Mmc_Fat_Get_File_Size()</pre>

## Mmc\_Fat\_Get\_Swap\_File

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Cf_Fat_Get_Swap_File( <b>dim</b> sectors_cnt <b>as longint</b> ) <b>as longint</b>
<b>Returns</b>	No. of start sector for the newly created swap file, if swap file was created; otherwise, the function returns zero.
<b>Description</b>	<p>This function is used to create a swap file on the MMC/SD media. It accepts as sectors_cnt argument the number of consecutive sectors that user wants the swap file to have. During its execution, the function searches for the available consecutive sectors, their number being specified by the sectors_cnt argument. If there is such space on the media, the swap file named MIKROSWP.SYS is created, and that space is designated (in FAT tables) to it. The attributes of this file are: system, archive and hidden, in order to distinct it from other files. If a file named MIKROSWP.SYS already exists on the media, this function deletes it upon creating the new one.</p> <p>The purpose of the swap file is to make reading and writing to MMC/SD media as fast as possible, by using the Mmc_Read_Sector and Mmc_Write_Sector functions directly, without potentially damaging the FAT system. Swap file can be considered as a "window" on the media where user can freely write/read the data, in any way (s)he wants to. Its main purpose in mikroBasic library is to be used for fast data acquisition; when the time-critical acquisition has finished, the data can be re-written into a "normal" file, and formatted in the most suitable way.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized for FAT operations with MMC. See Mmc_Fat_Init.
<b>Example</b>	<p><i>'----- Tries to create a swap file, whose size will be 'at least 1000 sectors. 'If it succeeds, it sends the No. of start sector over USART</i></p> <pre> <b>sub procedure</b> M_Create_Swap_File   size = Mmc_Fat_Get_Swap_File(1000)   <b>if</b> (size) <b>then</b>     Usart_Write(\$AA)     Usart_Write(Lo(size))     Usart_Write(Hi(size))     Usart_Write(Higher(size))     Usart_Write(Highest(size))     Usart_Write(\$AA)   <b>end if</b> <b>end sub</b> </pre>

## Library Example

The following code tests MMC library routines. First, we fill the buffer with 512 “M” characters and write it to sector 56; then, we repeat the sequence with character “E” at sector 56. Finally, we read the sectors 55 and 56 to check if the write was successful.

```

program mmc_test
dim tmp as byte
dim i as word
dim data as byte[512]

main:
    Usart_Init(9600)

    tmp = Mmc_Init(PORTC, 2)                ' Initialize ports

    for i = 0 to 512                        ' Fill the buffer with the "M" char
        data[i] = "M"
    next i

    tmp = Mmc_Write_Sector(55, data)        ' Write it to MMC card, sector 55

    for i = 0 to 512                        ' Fill the buffer with the "E" char
        data[i] = "E"
    next i

    tmp = Mmc_Write_Sector(56, data)        ' Write it to MMC card, sector 56

    ** Verify: **

    tmp = Mmc_Read_Sector(55, data)        ' Read from sector 55

    if tmp = 0 then                        ' Send 512 bytes from buffer to USART
        for i = 0 to 512
            Usart_Write(data[i])
        next i
    end if

    tmp = Mmc_Read_Sector(56, data)        ' Read from sector 56

    if tmp = 0 then                        ' Send 512 bytes from buffer to USART
        for i = 0 to 512
            Usart_Write(data[i])
        next i
    end if
end.

```

## Library Example

The next program tests MMC FAT routines. First, we create 5 different files in the root of MMC card, and fill with some information. Then, we read the files and send them via USART for a check.

```
program MMC_FAT_Test

const FAT_ERROR as string[20] = "FAT16 not found"
dim filename as string[14]
dim tmp, character, j as byte
dim size, i as longint
dim aux as string[5]
dim msg as string[100]

main:

    Usart_Init(19200)                ' Set up USART for the read of the files
    tmp = Mmc_Fat_Init(PORTC, 2)    ' Try to locate the FAT

    if tmp <> 0 then
        for tmp = 0 to Strlen(FAT_ERROR) - 1
            Usart_Write(FAT_ERROR[tmp])
        next tmp
    end if

    j = 1

    '** Write test, 5 files **

    for j = 1 to 5                    ' We want 5 files on the MMC card
        filename = "MYFILE0xTXT"     ' File names, e.g. "MYFILE01.TXT"
        filename[7] = j + 48         ' Set number 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5

        Mmc_Fat_Assign(filename, 1)  ' Create the file, if not found
        Mmc_Fat_Rewrite()            ' Clear the file and prepare for writing

        ' Form the text to be written
        aux = " "
        aux[0] = j + 48
        msg = "This is a test file, no." + aux

        Mmc_Fat_Write(msg)           ' Write data to the assigned file
    next j

    ' continues ..
```

```

' .. continued

*** Append test **

' Now let's add more data to the same files
for j = 1 to 5
    filename = "MYFILE0xTXT"
    filename[7] = j + 48

    Mmc_Fat_Assign(filename, 1)           ' Find the file and "assign" it
    Mmc_Fat_Append()                     ' Prepare for appending

    ' Form a text to be written
    aux = " "
    aux[0] = j + 48
    msg = "Append test, try " + aux

    Mmc_Set_File_Date(2005,5,j,12,47,12) ' Test the date function

    Mmc_Fat_Write(msg)                   ' Write data to the assigned file

    *** Read test **

    Mmc_Fat_Reset(size)                  ' Take the size of the file

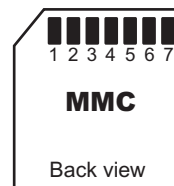
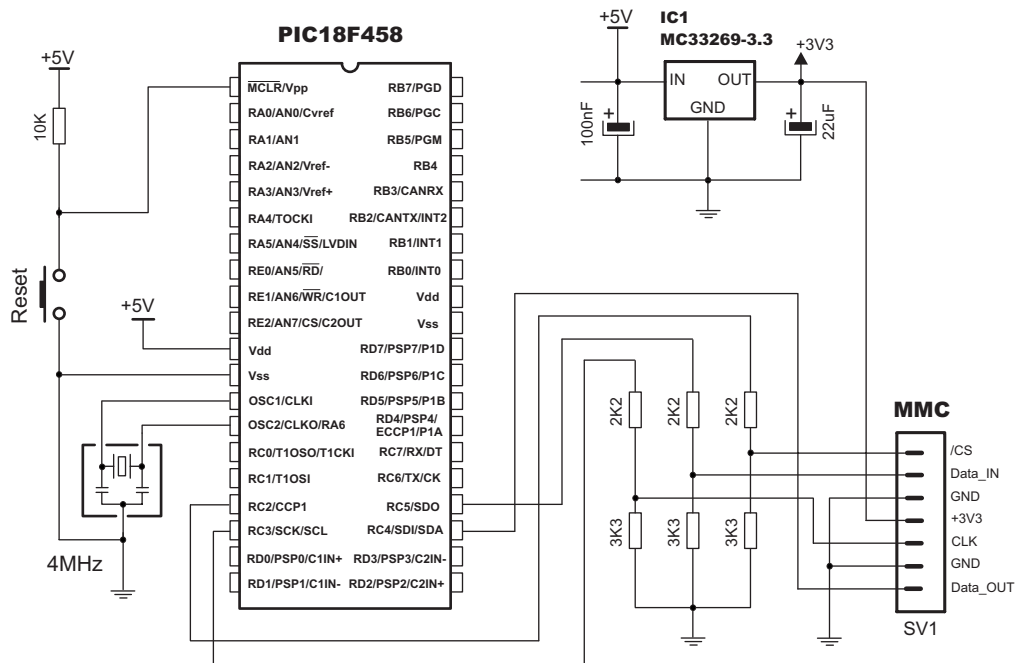
    ' Send whole file to USART, char by char
    for i = 1 to size
        Mmc_Fat_Read(character)
        Usart_Write(character)
    next i

next j

end.

```

## Hardware Connection



## OneWire Library

OneWire library provides routines for communication via OneWire bus, for example with DS1820 digital thermometer. This is a Master/Slave protocol, and all the cabling required is a single wire. Because of the hardware configuration it uses (single pullup and open collector drivers), it allows for the slaves even to get their power supply from that line.

Some basic characteristics of this protocol are:

- single master system,
- low cost,
- low transfer rates (up to 16 kbps),
- fairly long distances (up to 300 meters),
- small data transfer packages.

Each OneWire device also has a unique 64-bit registration number (8-bit device type, 48-bit serial number and 8-bit CRC), so multiple slaves can co-exist on the same bus.

Note that oscillator frequency  $F_{osc}$  needs to be at least 4MHz in order to use the routines with Dallas digital thermometers.

## Library Routines

Ow\_Reset  
Ow\_Read  
Ow\_Write



## Ow\_Reset

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Ow_Reset( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as byte</b> , pin <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns 0 if DS1820 is present, 1 if not present.
<b>Description</b>	Issues OneWire reset signal for DS1820. Parameters port and pin specify the location of DS1820.
<b>Requires</b>	Works with Dallas DS1820 temperature sensor only.
<b>Example</b>	Ow_Reset(PORTA, 5)    ' reset DS1820 connected to the RA5 pin

## Ow\_Read

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Ow_Read( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim</b> pin <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Data read from an external device over the OneWire bus.
<b>Description</b>	Reads one byte of data via the OneWire bus.
<b>Example</b>	tmp = Ow_Read(PORTA, 5)

## Ow\_Write

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Ow_Write( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim</b> pin, par <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Writes one byte of data (argument par) via OneWire bus.
<b>Example</b>	Ow_Write(PORTA, 5, \$CC)

## Library Example

The example reads the temperature from DS1820 sensor connected to RA5. Temperature value is continually displayed on LCD.

```

program onewire_test

dim i, j1, j2, por1, por2 as byte
dim text as char[20]

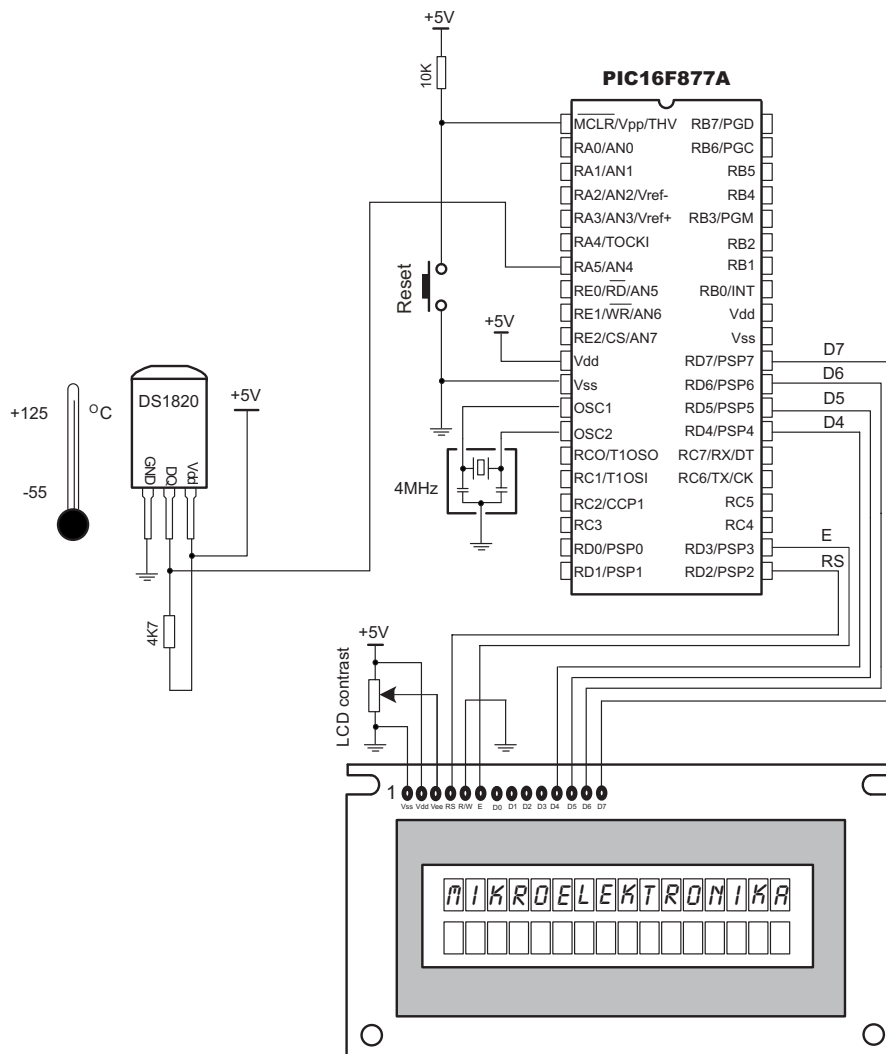
main:
    text    = "Temperature:"
    PORTB   = 0                ' Initialize PORTB
    PORTA   = 255              ' Initialize PORTA
    TRISB   = 0                ' PORTB is output
    TRISA   = 255              ' PORTA is input
    Lcd_Init(PORTB)
    Lcd_Cmd(Lcd_CURSOR_OFF)
    Lcd_Out(1, 1, text)

    do
        Ow_Reset(PORTA,5)      ' OneWire reset signal
        Ow_Write(PORTA,5,$CC)   ' Issue command to DS1820
        Ow_Write(PORTA,5,$44)   ' Issue command to DS1820
        Delay_us(120)
        i = Ow_Reset(PORTA,5)
        Ow_Write(PORTA,5,$CC)   ' Issue command to DS1820
        Ow_Write(PORTA,5,$BE)   ' Issue command to DS1820
        Delay_ms(1000)
        j1 = Ow_Read(PORTA,5)   ' Get result
        j1 = j1 >> 1            ' Assuming the temp. >= 0C
        ByteToStr(j1, text)     ' Convert j1 to text
        Lcd_Out(2, 8, text)     ' Print text
        Lcd_Chr(2, 10, 223)     ' "degree" character
        Lcd_Chr(2, 11, "C")
        Delay_ms(500)
    loop until FALSE           ' Endless loop

end.

```

## Hardware Connection



## PS/2 Library

mikroBasic provides a library for communicating with common PS/2 keyboard. The library does not utilize interrupts for data retrieval, and requires oscillator clock to be 6MHz and above.

Please note:

- The pins to which a PS/2 keyboard is attached should be connected to pull-up resistors.
- Although PS/2 is a two-way communication bus, this library does not provide PIC-to-keyboard communication; e.g. the Caps Lock LED will not turn on if you press the Caps Lock key.

## Library Routines

Ps2\_Init  
 Ps2\_Config  
 Ps2\_Key\_Read

### Ps2\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Ps2_Init( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Initializes port for work with PS/2 keyboard, with default pin settings. Port pin 0 is Data line, and port pin 1 is Clock line.</p> <p>You need to call either Ps2_Init or Ps2_Config before using other routines of PS/2 library.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	Both Data and Clock lines need to be in pull-up mode.
<b>Example</b>	Ps2_Init(PORTB)

## Ps2\_Config

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Ps2_Config( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as word</b> , <b>dim</b> clock <b>as word</b> , <b>dim</b> data <b>as word</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Initializes port for work with PS/2 keyboard, with custom pin settings. Parameters clock and data specify pins of port for Clock line and Data line, respectively. Clock and Data need to be in range 0..7 and cannot point to the same pin. You need to call either Ps2_Init or Ps2_Config before using other routines of PS/2 library.
<b>Requires</b>	Both Data and Clock lines need to be in pull-up mode.
<b>Example</b>	Ps2_Config(PORTB, 2, 3)

## Ps2\_Key\_Read

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Ps2_Key_Read( <b>dim byref</b> value, special, pressed <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns 1 if reading of a key from the keyboard was successful, otherwise returns 0.
<b>Description</b>	<p>The procedure retrieves information about key pressed.</p> <p>Parameter <i>value</i> holds the value of the key pressed. For characters, numerals, punctuation marks, and space, value will store the appropriate ASCII value. Procedure “recognizes” the function of Shift and Caps Lock, and behaves appropriately.</p> <p>Parameter <i>special</i> is a flag for special function keys (F1, Enter, Esc, etc). If key pressed is one of these, special will be set to 1, otherwise 0.</p> <p>Parameter <i>pressed</i> is set to 1 if the key is pressed, and 0 if released.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	PS/2 keyboard needs to be initialized; see Ps2_Init.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>' Press Enter to continue: do   if Ps2_Key_Read(val, spec, press) = 1 then     if (val = 13) and (spec = 1) then       break     end if   end if loop until FALSE</pre>

## Library Example

This simple example reads values of keys pressed on PS/2 keyboard and sends them via USART.

```

program ps2_test
dim keydata, special, down as byte

main:
    CMCON  = $07           ' Disable analog comparators (comment this for P18)
    INTCON = 0             ' Disable all interrupts
    Ps2_Init(PORTA)        ' Init PS/2 Keyboard on PORTA
    Delay_ms(100)           ' Wait for keyboard to finish

    do
        if Ps2_Key_Read(keydata, special, down) = 1 then
            if (down = 1) and (keydata = 16) then      ' Backspace
                ' ...do something with a backspace...
            else
                if (down = 1) and (keydata = 13) then  ' Enter
                    Usart_Write(13)
                else
                    if (down = 1) and (special = 0) and (keydata <> 1) then
                        Usart_Write(keydata)
                    end if
                end if
            end if
            end if
            Delay_ms(10)      ' debounce
        loop until FALSE
    end.

```

## PWM Library

CCP module is available with a number of PICmicros. mikroBasic provides library which simplifies using PWM HW Module.

**Note:** These routines support module on RC2, and won't work with modules on other ports. You can find examples for PICmicros with module on other ports in mikroBasic installation folder, subfolder "Examples". Also, mikroBasic does not support enhanced PWM modules.

### Library Routines

Pwm\_Init  
Pwm\_Change\_Duty  
Pwm\_Start  
Pwm\_Stop

### Pwm\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Pwm_Init( <b>dim</b> freq <b>as longint</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Initializes the PWM module with duty ratio 0. Parameter <i>freq</i> is a desired PWM frequency in Hz (refer to device data sheet for correct values in respect with <i>Fosc</i>).</p> <p>Pwm_Init needs to be called before using other functions from PWM Library.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	You need a CCP module on PORTC to use this library. Check mikroBasic installation folder, subfolder "Examples", for alternate solutions.
<b>Example</b>	Pwm_Init(5000)    ' Initialize PWM module at 5KHz

## Pwm\_Change\_Duty

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Pwm_Change_Duty( <b>dim</b> duty_ratio <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Changes PWM duty ratio. Parameter duty_ratio takes values from 0 to 255, where 0 is 0%, 127 is 50%, and 255 is 100% duty ratio. Other specific values for duty ratio can be calculated as (Percent*255)/100.
<b>Requires</b>	You need a CCP module on PORTC to use this library. To use this function, module needs to be initialized – see Pwm_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Pwm_Change_Duty(192)    ' Set duty ratio to 75%

## Pwm\_Start

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Pwm_Start
<b>Description</b>	Starts PWM.
<b>Requires</b>	You need a CCP module on PORTC to use this library. To use this function, module needs to be initialized – see Pwm_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Pwm_Start

## Pwm\_Stop

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Pwm_Stop
<b>Description</b>	Stops PWM.
<b>Requires</b>	You need a CCP module on PORTC to use this library. To use this function, module needs to be initialized – see Pwm_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Pwm_Stop



## Library Example

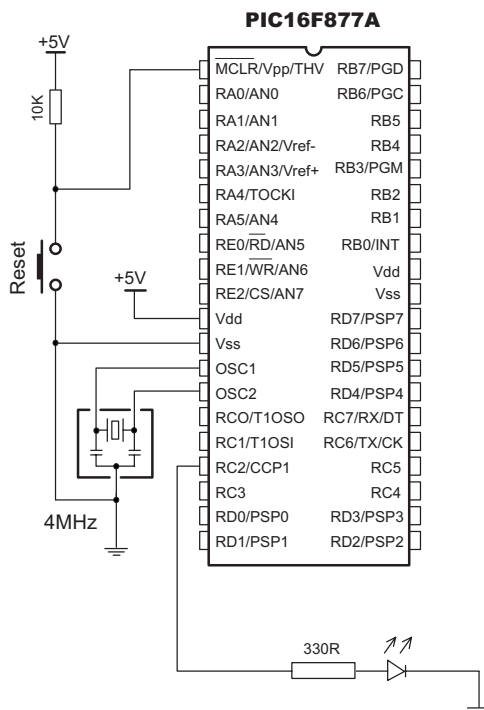
The example changes PWM duty ratio on pin RC2 continually. If LED is connected to RC2, you can observe the gradual change of emitted light.

```

program Pwm_Test
dim j as byte
main:
    j = 0
    PORTC = $FF           ' Initialize PORTC
    Pwm_Init(5000)         ' Initialize PWM module, freq = 5kHz.
    Pwm_Start              ' Start PWM
    while true
        for i = 0 to 20
            Delay_us(500)
            Inc(j)
            Pwm_Change_Duty(j) ' Change duty ratio
        wend
    end.

```

## Hardware Connection



## RS-485 Library

RS-485 is a multipoint communication which allows multiple devices to be connected to a single signal cable. mikroBasic provides a set of library routines to provide you comfortable work with RS-485 system using Master/Slave architecture. Master and Slave devices interchange packets of information, each of these packets containing synchronization bytes, CRC byte, address byte, and the data. Each Slave has its unique address and receives only the packets addressed to it. Slave can never initiate communication. It is programmer's responsibility to ensure that only one device transmits via 485 bus at a time.

RS-485 routines require USART module on PORTC. Pins of USART need to be attached to RS-485 interface transceiver, such as LTC485 or similar. Pins of transceiver (Receiver Output Enable and Driver Outputs Enable) should be connected to PORTC, pin 2 (check the figure at end of the chapter).

**Note:** Address 50 is the common address for all Slaves (packets containing address 50 will be received by all Slaves). The only exceptions are Slaves with addresses 150 and 169, which require their particular address to be specified in the packet.

## Library Routines

```
RS485Master_Init  
RS485Master_Receive  
RS485Master_Send  
RS485Slave_Init  
RS485Slave_Receive  
RS485Slave_Send
```

## RS485Master\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> RS485Master_Init( <b>dim</b> byref port <b>as</b> byte, <b>dim</b> pin <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Initializes PIC MCU as Master in RS-485 communication.
<b>Requires</b>	USART HW module needs to be initialized. See USART_Init.
<b>Example</b>	RS485Master_Init(PORTC, 2)

## RS485Master\_Receive

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> RS485Master_Receive( <b>dim</b> byref data <b>as</b> byte[5])
<b>Description</b>	<p>Receives any message sent by Slaves. Messages are multi-byte, so this procedure must be called for each byte received (see the example at the end of the chapter). Upon receiving a message, buffer is filled with the following values:</p> <p>data[0..2] is the message,  data[3] is number of message bytes received, 1–3,  data[4] is set to 255 when message is received,  data[5] is set to 255 if error has occurred,  data[6] is the address of the Slave which sent the message.</p> <p>Function automatically adjusts data[4] and data[5] upon every received message. These flags need to be cleared from the program.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	MCU must be initialized as Master in RS-485 communication in order to be assigned an address. See RS485Master_Init.
<b>Example</b>	RS485Master_Receive(msg)

## RS485Master\_Send

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> RS485Master_Send( <b>dim byref</b> data <b>as byte</b> [2], <b>dim</b> datalen, address <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Sends data from buffer to Slave(s) specified by address via RS-485; datalen is a number of bytes in message (1 <= datalen <= 3).
<b>Requires</b>	MCU must be initialized as Master in RS-485 communication in order to be assigned an address. See RS485Master_Init.  It is programmer's responsibility to ensure (by protocol) that only one device sends data via 485 bus at a time.
<b>Example</b>	RS485Master_Send(msg, 3, \$12)

## RS485Slave\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Rs485Slave_Init( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim</b> pin, address <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Initializes MCU as Slave with a specified address in RS-485 communication. Slave address can take any value between 0 and 255, except 50, which is common address for all slaves.
<b>Requires</b>	USART HW module needs to be initialized. See Usart_Init.
<b>Example</b>	RS485Slave_Init(PORTC, 2, 160) <i>' Initialize MCU as Slave with address 160</i>

## RS485Slave\_Receive

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> RS485Slave_Receive( <b>dim byref</b> data <b>as byte</b> [5])
<b>Description</b>	<p>Receives message addressed to it. Messages are multi-byte, so this procedure must be called for each byte received (see the example at the end of the chapter). Upon receiving a message, buffer is filled with the following values:</p> <p>data[0..2] is the message,  data[3] is number of message bytes received, 1–3,  data[4] is set to 255 when message is received,  data[5] is set to 255 if error has occurred,  data[6] is the address of the Slave which sent the message.</p> <p>Function automatically adjusts data[4] and data[5] upon every received message. These flags need to be cleared from the program.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	MCU must be initialized as Slave in RS-485 communication in order to be assigned an address. See RS485Slave_Init.
<b>Example</b>	RS485Slave_Read(msg)

## RS485Slave\_Send

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> RS485Slave_Write( <b>dim byref</b> data <b>as byte</b> [2], <b>dim</b> datalen <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Sends data from buffer to Master via RS-485; datalen is a number of bytes in message (1 <= datalen <= 3).
<b>Requires</b>	<p>MCU must be initialized as Slave in RS-485 communication in order to be assigned an address. See RS485Slave_Init.</p> <p>It is programmer's responsibility to ensure (by protocol) that only one device sends data via 485 bus at a time.</p>
<b>Example</b>	RS485Slave_Send(msg, 2)

## Library Example

The example demonstrates working with PIC as Slave nod in RS-485 communication. PIC receives only packets addressed to it (address 160 in our example), and general messages with target address 50. The received data is forwarded to PORTB, and sent back to Master.

```

program rs485_test
dim i, j as byte
dim dat as byte[8]           ' Message buffer

sub procedure interrupt
    if TestBit(RCSTA, OERR) = 1 then
        PORTD = $81
    end if
    RS485Slave_Read(dat)
end sub

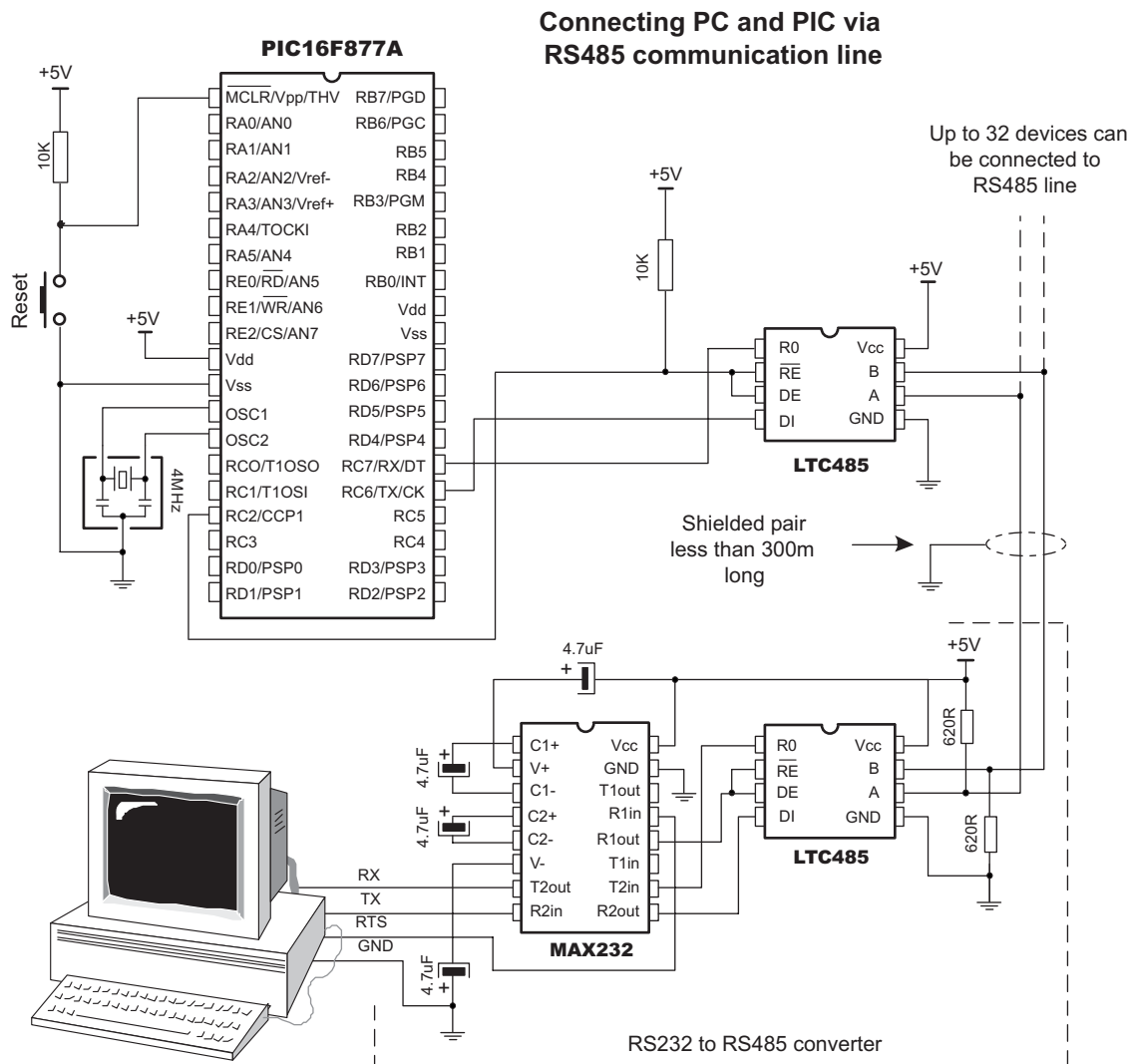
main:
    TRISB = 0
    TRISD = 0
    Usart_init(9600)           ' Initialize USART module
    RS485Slave_Init(PORTC, 2, 160) ' Initialize MCU as Slave, address 160
    SetBit(PIE1, RCIE)         ' Enable interrupt on byte received
    SetBit(INTCON, PEIE)       '   via USART (RS-485)
    ClearBit(PIE2, TXIE)
    SetBit(INTCON, GIE)
    PORTB = 0
    PORTD = 0
    dat[4] = 0                 ' Clear "msg received" flag
    dat[5] = 0                 ' Clear error flag

    while true
        if dat[5] = TRUE then           ' If there is error, set PORTD to $AA
            PORTD = $AA
        end if

        if dat[4] = TRUE then           ' If message received:
            dat[4] = 0                   ' Clear message received flag
            j = dat[3]                   ' Number of data bytes received
            for i = 1 to j
                PORTB = dat[i - 1]       ' Output received data bytes
            next i
            dat[0] = dat[0] + 1           ' Increment received dat[0]
            RS485Slave_Write(dat, 1)     ' Send it back to Master
        end if
    wend
end.

```

## Hardware Connection



## Software I2C Library

mikroBasic provides routines which implement software I<sup>2</sup>C. These routines are hardware independent and can be used with any MCU. Software I2C enables you to use MCU as Master in I2C communication. Multi-master mode is not supported.

**Note:** This library implements time-based activities, so interrupts need to be disabled when using Soft I<sup>2</sup>C.

### Library Routines

Soft\_I2C\_Config  
Soft\_I2C\_Start  
Soft\_I2C\_Read  
Soft\_I2C\_Write  
Soft\_I2C\_Stop

### Soft\_I2C\_Config

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Soft_I2C_Config( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim</b> SDA, SCL <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Configures software I <sup>2</sup> C. Parameter port specifies port of MCU on which SDA and SCL pins are located. Parameters SCL and SDA need to be in range 0–7 and cannot point at the same pin.  Soft_I2C_Config needs to be called before using other functions from Soft I2C Library.
<b>Example</b>	Soft_I2C_Config(PORTB, 1, 2)



## Soft\_I2C\_Start

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Soft_I2C_Start
<b>Description</b>	Issues START signal. Needs to be called prior to sending and receiving data.
<b>Requires</b>	Soft I <sup>2</sup> C must be configured before using this function. See Soft_I2C_Config.
<b>Example</b>	Soft_I2C_Start

## Soft\_I2C\_Read

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Soft_I2C_Read( <b>dim</b> ack <b>as</b> byte) <b>as</b> byte
<b>Returns</b>	Returns one byte from the slave.
<b>Description</b>	Reads one byte from the slave, and sends not acknowledge signal if parameter ack is 0, otherwise it sends acknowledge.
<b>Requires</b>	START signal needs to be issued in order to use this function. See Soft_I2C_Start.
<b>Example</b>	tmp = Soft_I2C_Read(0)    ' Read data, send not-acknowledge signal

## Soft\_I2C\_Write

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Soft_I2C_Write( <b>dim</b> data <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns 0 if there were no errors.
<b>Description</b>	Sends data byte (parameter data) via I <sup>2</sup> C bus.
<b>Requires</b>	START signal needs to be issued in order to use this function. See Soft_I2C_Start.
<b>Example</b>	Soft_I2C_Write(\$A3)

## Soft\_I2C\_Stop

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Soft_I2C_Stop
<b>Description</b>	Issues STOP signal.
<b>Requires</b>	START signal needs to be issued in order to use this function. See Soft_I2C_Start.
<b>Example</b>	Soft_I2C_Stop

## Library Example

The example demonstrates use of Software I<sup>2</sup>C Library. PIC MCU is connected (SCL, SDA pins) to 24C02 EEPROM. Program sends data to EEPROM (data is written at address 2). Then, we read data via I<sup>2</sup>C from EEPROM and send its value to PORTC, to check if the cycle was successful. Check the hardware connection scheme at hardware I2C Library.

```

program soft_i2c_test

dim ee_adr, ee_data as byte
dim jj as word

main:
    Soft_I2C_Config(PORTD, 3, 4)      ' Initialize full master mode
    TRISC = 0                        ' PORTC is output
    PORTC = $FF                      ' Initialize PORTC
    Soft_I2C_Start()                 ' Issue I2C signal: start
    Soft_I2C_Write($A2)               ' Send byte via I2C (command to 24c02)
    ee_adr = 2
    Soft_I2C_Write(ee_adr)            ' Send byte (address for EEPROM)
    ee_data = $AA
    Soft_I2C_Write(ee_data)           ' Send data to be written
    Soft_I2C_Stop()                  ' Issue I2C signal: stop

    for jj = 0 to 65500              ' Pause while EEPROM writes data
        nop
    next jj

    Soft_I2C_Start()                 ' Issue I2C start signal
    Soft_I2C_Write($A2)               ' Send byte via I2C
    ee_adr = 2
    Soft_I2C_Write(ee_adr)            ' Send byte (address for EEPROM)
    Soft_I2C_Start()                 ' Issue I2C signal: repeated start
    Soft_I2C_Write($A3)               ' Send byte (request data from EEPROM)
    ee_data = Soft_I2C_Read(0)        ' Read the data
    Soft_I2C_Stop()                  ' Issue I2C signal: stop
    PORTC = ee_data                  ' Display data on PORTC

noend: goto noend
end.

```

## Software SPI Library

mikroBasic provides library which implement software SPI. These routines are hardware independent and can be used with any MCU. You can easily communicate with other devices via SPI: A/D converters, D/A converters, MAX7219, LTC1290, etc.

The library configures SPI to master mode, clock = 50kHz, data sampled at the middle of interval, clock idle state low and data transmitted at low to high edge.

**Note:** These functions implement time-based activities, so interrupts need to be disabled when using the library.

### Library Routines

Soft\_Spi\_Config  
Soft\_Spi\_Read  
Soft\_Spi\_Write

### Soft\_Spi\_Config

Prototype	<b>sub procedure</b> Soft_Spi_Config( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim</b> SDI, SDO, SCK <b>as byte</b> )
Description	Configures and initializes software SPI. Parameter port specifies port of MCU on which SDI, SDO, and SCK pins will be located. Parameters SDI, SDO, and SCK need to be in range 0–7 and cannot point at the same pin.  Soft_Spi_Config needs to be called before using other functions from Soft SPI Library.
Example	This will set SPI to master mode, clock = 50kHz, data sampled at the middle of interval, clock idle state low and data transmitted at low to high edge. SDI pin is RB1, SDO pin is RB2 and SCK pin is RB3:  Soft_Spi_Config(PORTB, 1, 2, 3)

## Soft\_Spi\_Read

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Soft_Spi_Read( <b>dim</b> buffer <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns the received data.
<b>Description</b>	Provides clock by sending <code>buffer</code> and receives data.
<b>Requires</b>	Soft SPI must be initialized and communication established before using this function. See <code>Soft_Spi_Config</code> .
<b>Example</b>	<code>tmp = Soft_Spi_Read(buffer)</code>

## Soft\_Spi\_Write

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Soft_Spi_Write( <b>dim</b> data <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Immediately transmits data.
<b>Requires</b>	Soft SPI must be initialized and communication established before using this function. See <code>Soft_Spi_Config</code> .
<b>Example</b>	<code>Soft_Spi_Write(1)</code>

## Library Example

The example demonstrates using Software SPI library. Assumed HW configuration is: max7219 (chip select pin) is connected to RD1, and SDO, SDI, SCK pins are connected to corresponding pins of max7219. Hardware connection is given on page 186.

```
program soft_spi_test
include "m7219"

dim i as byte

main:
    ' Standard configuration
    Soft_Spi_Config(PORTD, 4, 5, 3)
    TRISC = TRISC and $FD
    max7219_init                ' Initialize max7219
    SetBit(PORTD, 1)            ' Select max7219
    Soft_Spi_Write(1)           ' Send address (1) to max7219
    Soft_Spi_Write(7)           ' Send data (7) to max7219
    ClearBit(PORTD, 1)          ' Deselect max7219
end.
```

## Software UART Library

mikroBasic provides library which implements software UART. These routines are hardware independent and can be used with any MCU. You can easily communicate with other devices via RS232 protocol – simply use the functions listed below.

**Note:** This library implements time-based activities, so interrupts need to be disabled when using Soft UART.

### Library Routines

Soft\_Uart\_Init  
Soft\_Uart\_Read  
Soft\_Uart\_Write

### Soft\_Uart\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Soft_Uart_Init( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim</b> rx, tx, baud_rate, inverted <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Initializes software UART. Parameter port specifies port of MCU on which RX and TX pins are located; parameters rx and tx need to be in range 0–7 and cannot point at the same pin; baud_rate is the desired baud rate. Maximum baud rate depends on PIC's clock and working conditions.</p> <p>Parameter inverted, if set to non-zero value, indicates inverted logic on output.</p> <p>Soft_Uart_Init needs to be called before using other functions from Soft UART Library.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p>This will initialize software UART and establish the communication at 9600 bps:</p> <pre>Soft_Uart_Init(PORTB, 1, 2, 9600, 0)</pre>

## Soft\_Uart\_Read

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Soft_Uart_Read( <b>dim byref</b> error <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns a received byte.
<b>Description</b>	Function receives a byte via software UART. Parameter <code>error</code> will be zero if the transfer was successful. This is a non-blocking function call, so you should test the <code>error</code> manually (check the example below).
<b>Requires</b>	Soft UART must be initialized and communication established before using this function. See <code>Soft_Uart_Init</code> .
<b>Example</b>	<pre>' Here's a loop which holds until data is received: error = 1 do     data = Soft_Uart_Read(error) loop until error = 0</pre>

## Soft\_Uart\_Write

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Soft_Uart_Write( <b>dim</b> data <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Function transmits a byte ( <code>data</code> ) via UART.
<b>Requires</b>	<p>Soft UART must be initialized and communication established before using this function. See <code>Soft_Uart_Init</code>.</p> <p>Be aware that during transmission, software UART is incapable of receiving data – data transfer protocol must be set in such a way to prevent loss of information.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<code>Soft_Uart_Write(\$0A)</code>



## Library Example

The example demonstrates simple data exchange via software UART. When PIC MCU receives data, it immediately sends the same data back. If PIC is connected to the PC (see the figure below), you can test the example from mikroBasic terminal for RS232 communication, menu choice **Tools > Terminal**.

```

program soft_uart_test
dim received_byte, er as byte

main:
    Soft_Uart_Init(PORTB, 1, 2, 2400, 0)           ' Initialize soft UART
    er = 1
    while true
        do
            received_byte = Soft_Uart_Read(er)     ' Read received data
            loop until er = 0
            Soft_Uart_Write(received_byte)         ' Send data via UART
        wend
    end.

```

## Sound Library

mikroBasic provides a Sound Library which allows you to use sound signalization in your applications. You need a simple piezo speaker (or other hardware) on designated port.

### Library Routines

Sound\_Init  
Sound\_Play

#### Sound\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Sound_Init( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim</b> pin <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Prepares hardware for output at specified port and pin. Parameter pin needs to be within range 0–7.
<b>Example</b>	Sound_Init(PORTB, 2) <i>' Initialize sound at RB2</i>

#### Sound\_Play

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Sound_Play( <b>dim</b> period_div_10 <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim</b> num_of_periods <b>as word</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Plays the sound at the specified port and pin (see Sound_Init). Parameter period_div_10 is a sound period given in MCU cycles divided by ten, and generated sound lasts for a specified number of periods (num_of_periods).
<b>Requires</b>	To hear the sound, you need a piezo speaker (or other hardware) on designated port. Also, you must call Sound_Init to prepare hardware for output.
<b>Example</b>	To play sound of 1KHz: $T = 1/f = 1\text{ms} = 1000 \text{ cycles @ } 4\text{MHz}$ . This gives us our first parameter: $1000/10 = 100$ . Play 150 periods like this:  Sound_Play(100, 150)

## Library Example

The example is a simple demonstration of how to use sound library for playing tones on a piezo speaker. The code can be used with any MCU that has PORTB and ADC on PORTA. Sound frequencies in this example are generated by reading the value from ADC and using the lower byte of the result as base for T ( $f = 1/T$ ).

```
program sound_test
dim adcvalue as integer

main:
    PORTB  = 0           ' Clear PORTB
    TRISB  = 0           ' PORTB is output
    INTCON = 0           ' Disable all interrupts
    ADCON1 = $82         ' Configure VDD as Vref, and analog channels
    TRISA  = $FF         ' PORTA is input
    Sound_Init(PORTB, 2) ' Initialize sound at RB2

    while true           ' Play in loop:
        adcvalue = ADC_Read(2) ' Get lower byte from ADC
        Sound_Play(adcvalue, 200) ' Play the sound
    wend
end.
```

## SPI Library

SPI module is available with a number of PIC MCU models. mikroBasic provides a library for initializing Slave mode and comfortable work with Master mode. PIC can easily communicate with other devices via SPI: A/D converters, D/A converters, MAX7219, LTC1290, etc. You need PIC MCU with hardware integrated SPI (for example, PIC16F877).

**Note:** This library supports module on PORTB or PORTC, and will not work with modules on other ports. Examples for PICmicros with module on other ports can be found in your mikroBasic installation folder, subfolder “Examples”.

### Library Routines

Spi\_Init  
Spi\_Init\_Advanced  
Spi\_Read  
Spi\_Write

### Spi\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Init
<b>Description</b>	<p>Configures and initializes SPI with default settings. Spi_Init_Advanced or Spi_Init needs to be called before using other functions from SPI Library.</p> <p>Default settings are: Master mode, clock Fosc/4, clock idle state low, data transmitted on low to high edge, and input data sampled at the middle of interval.</p> <p>For custom configuration, use Spi_Init_Advanced.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	You need PIC MCU with hardware integrated SPI.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Init

## Spi\_Init\_Advanced

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Init_Advanced( <b>dim</b> master, data_sample, clock_idle, transmit_edge <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Configures and initializes SPI. Spi_Init_Advanced or Spi_Init needs to be called before using other functions of SPI Library.</p> <p>Parameter mast_slav determines the work mode for SPI; can have the values:</p> <pre> MASTER_OSC_DIV4      ' Master clock=Fosc/4 MASTER_OSC_DIV16     ' Master clock=Fosc/16 MASTER_OSC_DIV64     ' Master clock=Fosc/64 MASTER_TMR2          ' Master clock source TMR2 SLAVE_SS_ENABLE       ' Master Slave select enabled SLAVE_SS_DIS          ' Master Slave select disabled </pre> <p>The data_sample determines when data is sampled; can have the values:</p> <pre> DATA_SAMPLE_MIDDLE   ' Input data sampled in middle of interval DATA_SAMPLE_END      ' Input data sampled at the end of interval </pre> <p>Parameter clock_idle determines idle state for clock; can have the following values:</p> <pre> CLK_IDLE_HIGH        ' Clock idle HIGH CLK_IDLE_LOW          ' Clock idle LOW </pre> <p>Parameter transmit_edge can have the following values:</p> <pre> LOW_2_HIGH           ' Data transmit on low to high edge HIGH_2_LOW           ' Data transmit on high to low edge </pre>
<b>Requires</b>	You need PIC MCU with hardware integrated SPI.
<b>Example</b>	<p>This will set SPI to master mode, clock = Fosc/4, data sampled at the middle of interval, clock idle state low and data transmitted at low to high edge:</p> <pre> Spi_Init_Advanced(MASTER_OSC_DIV4, DATA_SAMPLE_MIDDLE, CLK_IDLE_LOW, LOW_2_HIGH) </pre>

## Spi\_Read

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Spi_Read( <b>dim</b> buffer <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns the received data.
<b>Description</b>	Provides clock by sending <code>buffer</code> and receives data at the end of period.
<b>Requires</b>	SPI must be initialized and communication established before using this function. See <code>Spi_Init_Advanced</code> or <code>Spi_Init</code> .
<b>Example</b>	<code>take = Spi_Read(buffer)</code>

## Spi\_Write

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Write( <b>dim</b> data <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Description</b>	Writes byte <code>data</code> to SSPBUF, and immediately starts the transmission.
<b>Requires</b>	SPI must be initialized and communication established before using this function. See <code>Spi_Init_Advanced</code> or <code>Spi_Init</code> .
<b>Example</b>	<code>Spi_Write(1)</code>

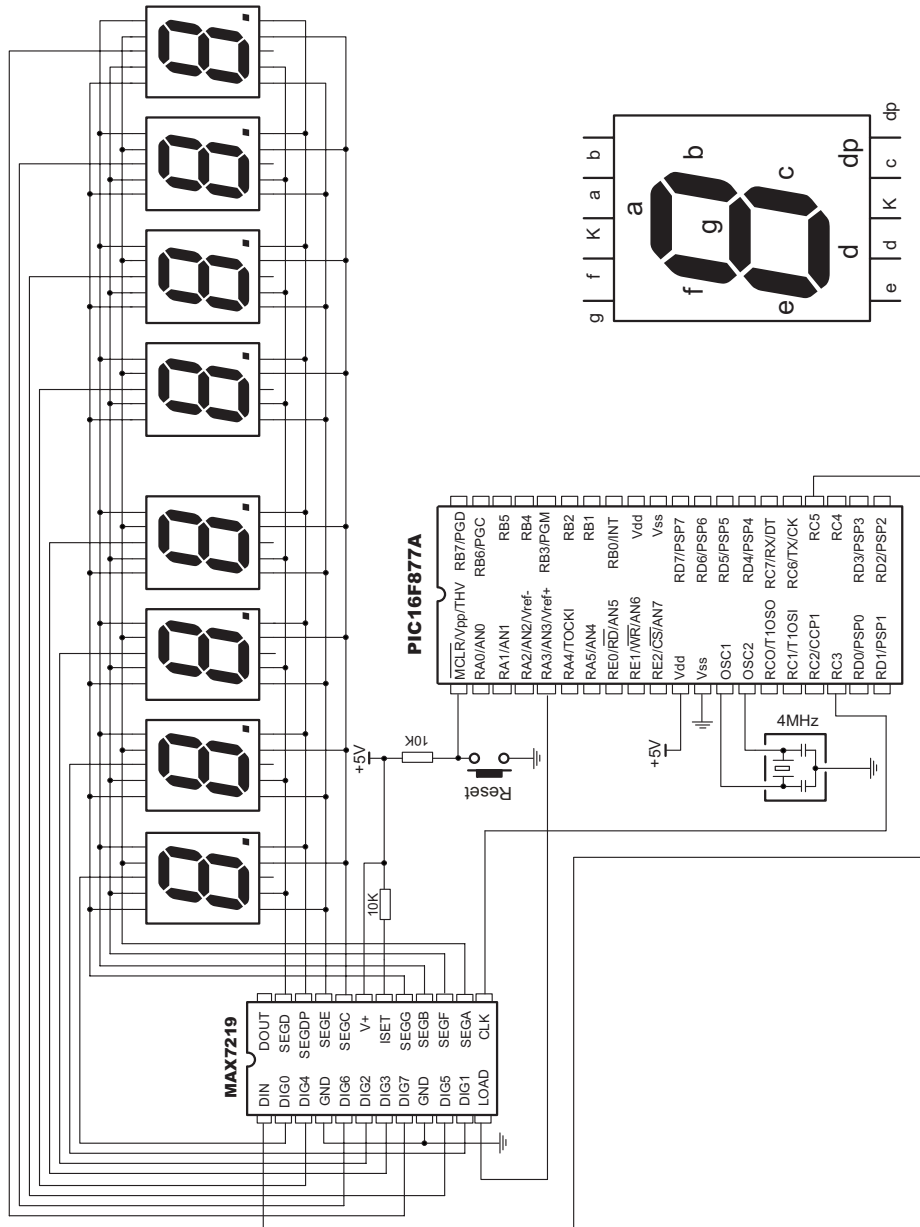
## Library Example

The code demonstrates how to use SPI library procedures and functions. Assumed configuration is: max7219 (chip select pin) connected to RC1, and SDO, SDI, SCK pins are connected to corresponding pins of max7219.

```
program spi_test
include "m7219"

main:
    Spi_Init                ' Standard configuration
    TRISC = TRISC and $FD
    max7219_init            ' Initialize max7219
    ClearBit(PORTC, 1)      ' Select max7219
    Spi_Write(1)            ' Send address (1) to max7219
    Spi_Write(7)            ' Send data (7) to max7219
    SetBit(PORTC, 1)        ' Deselect max7219
end.
```

## HW Connection





## SPI Compact Flash Library

Compact Flash Library provides routines for accessing data on Compact Flash card (abbrev. CF further in text) via SPI. CF cards are widely used memory elements, commonly found in digital cameras. Great capacity (8MB ~ 2GB, and more) and excellent access time of typically few microseconds make them very attractive for microcontroller applications.

In CF card, data is divided into sectors, one sector usually comprising 512 bytes (few older models have sectors of 256B). Read and write operations are not performed directly, but successively through 512B buffer. Following routines can be used for CF with FAT16, and FAT32 file system. Note that routines for file handling can be used only with FAT16 file system.

**Important!** Before write operation, make sure you don't overwrite boot or FAT sector as it could make your card on PC or digital cam unreadable. Drive mapping tools, such as Winhex, can be of a great assistance.

### Library Routines

```

Spi_Cf_Init
Spi_Cf_Detect
Spi_Cf_Total_Size
Spi_Cf_Read_Init
Spi_Cf_Read_Byte
Spi_Cf_Read_Word
Spi_Cf_Write_Init
Spi_Cf_Write_Byte
Spi_Cf_Write_Word

Spi_Cf_Find_File
Spi_Cf_File_Write_Init
Spi_Cf_File_Write_Byte
Spi_Cf_Read_Sector
Spi_Cf_Write_Sector
Spi_Cf_Set_File_Date
Spi_Cf_File_Write_Complete

```

The following function is for compiler internal purpose only:

```

Spi_Cf_Set_Reg_Adr

```

## Spi\_Cf\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Cf_Init
<b>Description</b>	Establishes SPI communication with CF and Initializes CF. The Chip Select line is at PORTC.1. This procedure needs to be called before using the rest of the SPI CF library.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Cf_Init()

## Spi\_Cf\_Detect

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Spi_Cf_Detect <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns 1 if CF is present, otherwise returns 0.
<b>Description</b>	Checks for presence of CF card on the control port of the port expander.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>' Wait until CF card is inserted: do   nop loop until Spi_Cf_Detect() = 1</pre>

## Spi\_Cf\_Total\_Size

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Spi_Cf_Total_Size <b>as logint</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Card size in kilobytes.
<b>Description</b>	Returns size of Compact Flash card in kilobytes.
<b>Example</b>	size = Spi_Cf_Total_Size()

## Spi\_Cf\_Read\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Cf_Read_Init( <b>dim</b> address <b>as</b> longint, <b>dim</b> sectcnt <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Initializes CF card for reading. Parameter address specifies the sector address from where data will be read, and sectcnt is the total number of sectors prepared for reading.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized. See Spi_Cf_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Cf_Read_Init(590, 1)

## Spi\_Cf\_Read\_Byte

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Spi_Cf_Read_Byte <b>as</b> byte
<b>Returns</b>	Returns byte from CF.
<b>Description</b>	Reads one byte from CF.
<b>Requires</b>	CF must be initialized for read operation. See Spi_Cf_Read_Init.
<b>Example</b>	PORTC = Spi_Cf_Read_Byte() ' Read byte and display it on PORTC

## Cf\_Read\_Word

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Spi_Cf_Read_Word <b>as</b> word
<b>Returns</b>	Returns word (16-bit) from CF.
<b>Description</b>	Reads one word from CF.
<b>Requires</b>	CF must be initialized for read operation. See Spi_Cf_Read_Init.
<b>Example</b>	PORTC = Spi_Cf_Read_Word() ' Read word and display it on PORTC

## Spi\_Cf\_Write\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Cf_Write_Init( <b>dim</b> address <b>as</b> longint, <b>dim</b> sectcnt <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Initializes CF card for writing. Parameter address specifies sector address where data will be stored and sectcnt is total number of sectors prepared for write operation.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized. See Spi_Cf_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Cf_Write_Init(590, 1)

## Spi\_Cf\_Write\_Byte

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Cf_Write_Byte( <b>dim</b> data <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Writes one byte (data) to CF. All 512 bytes are transferred to a buffer.
<b>Requires</b>	CF must be initialized for write operation. See Spi_Cf_Write_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Cf_Write_Byte(100)

## Spi\_Cf\_Write\_Word

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Cf_Write_Word( <b>dim</b> data <b>as</b> word)
<b>Description</b>	Writes one word (data) to CF. All 512 bytes are transferred to a buffer.
<b>Requires</b>	CF must be initialized for write operation. See Spi_Cf_Write_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Cf_Write_Word(100)

## Spi\_Cf\_Find\_File

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Cf_Find_File( <b>dim</b> find_first <b>as</b> byte, <b>dim byref</b> file_name <b>as</b> string[11])
<b>Description</b>	Routine looks for files on CF card. Parameter <code>find_first</code> can be TRUE or FALSE; if TRUE, routine looks for the first file on card, in order of physical writing. Otherwise, routine “moves forward” to the next file from the current position, again in physical order. If file is found, routine writes its name and extension in the string <code>file_name</code> . If no file is found, the string will be filled with zeroes.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized. See <code>Spi_Cf_Init</code> .
<b>Example</b>	<pre>Spi_Cf_Find_File(TRUE, file) <b>if</b> file[0] &lt;&gt; 0 <b>then</b> ... ' if first file found, handle it</pre>

## Spi\_Cf\_File\_Write\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Cf_File_Write_Init
<b>Description</b>	Initializes CF card for file writing operation (FAT16 only).
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized. See <code>Spi_Cf_Init</code> .
<b>Example</b>	<pre>Spi_Cf_File_Write_Init()</pre>

## Spi\_Cf\_File\_Write\_Byte

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Cf_File_Write_Byte( <b>dim</b> data <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Adds one byte (data) to file. You can supply ASCII value as parameter, for example 48 for zero.
<b>Requires</b>	CF must be initialized for file write operation. See Spi_Cf_File_Write_Init.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>' Write 50000 zeroes (bytes) to file: <b>for</b> i = 0 <b>to</b> 50000     Spi_Cf_File_Write_Byte(48)     Inc(i) <b>next</b> i</pre>

## Spi\_Cf\_Read\_Sector

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Cf_Read_Sector( <b>dim</b> sector_number <b>as</b> word, <b>dim byref</b> buffer <b>as</b> byte[512])
<b>Description</b>	Reads one sector (sector_number) into buffer.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized. See Spi_Cf_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Cf_Read_Sector(22, data)

## Spi\_Cf\_Write\_Sector

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Cf_Write_Sector( <b>dim</b> sector_number <b>as</b> word, <b>dim byref</b> buffer <b>as</b> byte[512])
<b>Description</b>	Writes value from buffer to CF sector at sector_number.
<b>Requires</b>	Ports must be initialized. See Spi_Cf_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Cf_Write_Sector(22, data)

## Spi\_Cf\_Set\_File\_Date

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Cf_Set_File_Date( <b>dim</b> year <b>as</b> word, <b>dim</b> month, day, hours, min, sec <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Writes system timestamp to a file. Use this routine before finalizing a file; otherwise, file will be assigned a random timestamp.
<b>Requires</b>	CF must be initialized for file write operation. See Spi_Cf_File_Write_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Cf_Set_File_Date(2005,4,1,18,7,0) ' April 1st 2005, 18:07:00

## Spi\_Cf\_File\_Write\_Complete

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Cf_File_Write_Complete( <b>dim</b> byref filename <b>as</b> char[8], <b>dim</b> byref extension <b>as</b> char[3])
<b>Description</b>	Finalizes writing to file. Upon all data has be written to file, use this function to close the file and make it readable. Parameter filename must be 8 character long in uppercase. Don't forget to write a timestamp with Spi_Cf_Set_File_Date before finalizing a file.
<b>Requires</b>	CF must be initialized for file write operation. See Spi_Cf_File_Write_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Cf_File_Write_Complete("MY_FILE1", "TXT")

## Library Examples

The example waits until the CF card is inserted, and when plugged, it creates 5 text files on the card. Each file will be appended the same timestamp.

```
program Spi_Cf_FAT_example

dim i1 as word
dim index as byte
dim fname as string[8]
dim ext as string[3]

sub procedure Init
    TRISC = 0           ' PORTC is output
    Spi_Cf_Init()       ' Initialize CF via SPI

    ' Wait until CF card is inserted
    do
        nop
    loop until Spi_Cf_Detect()

    ' Wait for a while until the card is stabilized
    Delay_ms(50)
end sub

main:
    ext = "TXT"
    index = 0           ' Index of file to be written

    while index < 5

        PORTC = 0
        Init()
        PORTC = index

        ' Initialization for writing to new file
        Spi_Cf_File_Write_Init()

        i1 = 0
        while i1 < 50000
            ' Write 50000 bytes to file
            Spi_Cf_File_Write_Byte(48+index)
            Inc(i1)
        wend

        ' continues ..
```



```

' .. continued

fname = "MY_TEST1"           ' Name must be 8 character long in uppercase
fname[8] = 48 + index        ' Ensure that files have different names

Spi_Cf_Set_File_Date(2005,1,1,0,0,0)      ' Append a timestamp
Spi_Cf_File_Write_Complete(fname,ext)      ' Close the file

Inc(index)
wend

PORTC = $FF
end.

```

The following example writes 512 bytes at sector no.590, and then reads the data and prints on PORTC for a visual check.

```

program Spi_Cf_example
dim i as word

main:
    TRISC = 0                ' PORTC is output
    Spi_Cf_Init()           ' Initialize CF via SPI

    do
        nop
    loop until Spi_Cf_Detect() ' Wait until CF card is inserted

    Delay_ms(500)
    Spi_Cf_Write_Init(590, 1) ' Initialize write at sector address 590
                                ' of 1 sector (512 bytes)
    for i = 0 to 511          ' Write 512 bytes to sector (590)
        Spi_Cf_Write_Byte(i + 11)
    next i

    PORTC = $FF
    Delay_ms(1000)
    Spi_Cf_Read_Init(590, 1)  ' Initialize write at sector address 590
                                ' of 1 sector (512 bytes)
    for i = 0 to 511          ' Read 512 bytes from sector (590)
        PORTC = Spi_Cf_Read_Byte() ' Read byte and display on PORTC
        Delay_ms(1000)
    next i
end.

```

[illegible]

## SPI Expander Library

The SPI Expander Library facilitates working with MCP23S08, Microchip's SPI port expander. The chip connects to the PIC according to the scheme presented below.

**Note:** PIC needs to have a hardware SPI module.

### Library Routines

```
Spi_Expander_Init
Spi_Expander_Read_Tris
Spi_Expander_Write_Tris
Spi_Expander_Read_Pullup
Spi_Expander_Write_Pullup
Spi_Expander_Read_Port
Spi_Expander_Write_Port
```

### Spi\_Expander\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Expander_Init
<b>Description</b>	<p>Establishes SPI communication with the expander and initializes the expander. Chip Select line is at PORTC.1.</p> <p>This procedure needs to be called before using other routines of the SPI Expander library.</p>
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Expander_Init()

## Spi\_Expander\_Read\_Tris

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Spi_Expander_Read_Tris( <b>dim</b> address <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Data from the TRIS register of the expander.
<b>Description</b>	Retrieves data from the TRIS register of the expander. Parameter address is the address of the chip, and is hardware selected.
<b>Requires</b>	Expander must be initialized, Spi_Expander_Init needs to be called first.
<b>Example</b>	temp = Spi_Expander_Read_Tris(0x02)

## Spi\_Expander\_Write\_Tris

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Expander_Write_Tris( <b>dim</b> address, data <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Writes data into TRIS register of the expander. Parameter address is the address of the chip, and is hardware selected.
<b>Requires</b>	Expander must be initialized, Spi_Expander_Init needs to be called first.
<b>Example</b>	' Connect A1 pin to VCC and A0 pin to GND, ' i.e. sets the port as output: Spi_Expander_Write_Tris(0x02, 0x00)

## Spi\_Expander\_Read\_Pullup

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Spi_Expander_Read_Pullup( <b>dim</b> address <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Data from the Pull-up register of the expander.
<b>Description</b>	Retrieves data from the Pull-up register of the expander. Parameter address is the address of the chip, and is hardware selected.
<b>Requires</b>	Expander must be initialized, Spi_Expander_Init needs to be called first.
<b>Example</b>	temp = Spi_Expander_Read_Pullup(0x02)

## Spi\_Expander\_Write\_Pullup

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Expander_Write_Pullup( <b>dim</b> address, data <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Writes data into Pull-up register of the expander. Parameter data is a binary mask for setting the pull-up on individual pins: 0 - no pull up; 1 - pull up enabled, 100ohm resistor per pin. Parameter address is the address of the chip, and is hardware selected.
<b>Requires</b>	Expander must be initialized, Spi_Expander_Init needs to be called first.
<b>Example</b>	' 4 = binary 100, enable pull-up on third pin, e.g. RB3 Spi_Expander_Write_Pullup(0x02, 4)

## Spi\_Expander\_Read\_Port

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Spi_Expander_Read_Port( <b>dim</b> address <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Data from the port.
<b>Description</b>	Retrieves data from the port specified by address.
<b>Requires</b>	Expander must be initialized, Spi_Expander_Init needs to be called first.
<b>Example</b>	temp = Spi_Expander_Read_Port(0x02)

## Spi\_Expander\_Write\_Port

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Expander_Write_Port( <b>dim</b> address, data <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Writes data to port specified by address.
<b>Requires</b>	Expander must be initialized, Spi_Expander_Init needs to be called first.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Expander_Write_Port(0x02, 0x00)

## Library Example

The following example demonstrates working with four different chips via SPI expander:

```
program spi_expander_demo

main:

    TRISB = 0

    Spi_Expander_Init()

    Spi_Expander_Write_Trис(0, 0)           ' 1st chip's port is output
    Spi_Expander_Write_Port(0, 0x03)       ' Turn its first pair of LED's on

    Spi_Expander_Write_Trис(1, 0)           ' 2nd chip's port is output
    Spi_Expander_Write_Port(1, 0x0C)       ' Turn its second pair of LED's on

    Spi_Expander_Write_Trис(2, 0)           ' 3rd chip's port is output
    Spi_Expander_Write_Port(2, 0x30)       ' Turn its third pair of LED's on

    Spi_Expander_Write_Trис(3, 0xFF)        ' 4th chip's port is input
    Spi_Expander_Write_Pullup(3, 0xFF)     ' Enable pull-up on all of its pins

    ' continually read port on 4th chip
while TRUE
        PORTB = Spi_Expander_Read_Port(3)  ' Display reading on MCU's PORTB
    wend

end.
```

[illegible]



## SPI GLCD Library

mikroPascal provides a library for operating the Graphic LCD 128x64 via SPI.

**Note:** Be sure to designate port with GLCD as output, before using any of the following library procedures or functions.

**Note:** The library works only with PIC18 family.

### Library Routines

Basic routines:

`Spi_Glcd_Init`  
`Spi_Glcd_Set_Side`  
`Spi_Glcd_Set_Page`  
`Spi_Glcd_Set_X`  
`Spi_Glcd_Read_Data`  
`Spi_Glcd_Write_Data`

Advanced routines:

`Spi_Glcd_Fill`  
`Spi_Glcd_Dot`  
`Spi_Glcd_Line`  
`Spi_Glcd_V_Line`  
`Spi_Glcd_H_Line`  
`Spi_Glcd_Rectangle`  
`Spi_Glcd_Box`  
`Spi_Glcd_Circle`  
`Spi_Glcd_Set_Font`  
`Spi_Glcd_Write_Char`  
`Spi_Glcd_Write_Text`  
`Spi_Glcd_Image`

## Spi\_Glcd\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Glcd_Init
<b>Description</b>	Establishes SPI communication with GLCD and Initializes GLCD. The Chip Select line is at PORTC.1. This procedure needs to be called before using other routines of SPI GLCD library.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Glcd_Init()

## Spi\_Glcd\_Set\_Side

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Glcd_Set_Side( <b>dim</b> x <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Selects side of GLCD, left or right. Parameter x specifies the side: values from 0 to 63 specify the left side, and values higher than 64 specify the right side.</p> <p>Use the functions Spi_Glcd_Set_Side, Spi_Glcd_Set_X, and Spi_Glcd_Set_Page to specify an exact position on GLCD. Then, you can use Spi_Glcd_Write_Data or Spi_Glcd_Read_Data on that location.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Spi_Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	<i>' These 2 lines are equivalent, and select the left side of GLCD</i> Spi_Glcd_Select_Side(0) Spi_Glcd_Select_Side(10)

## Spi\_Glcd\_Set\_Page

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Glcd_Set_Page( <b>dim</b> page <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Selects page of GLCD, technically a line on display; parameter page can be 0..7.
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Spi_Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Glcd_Set_Page(5)

## Spi\_Glcd\_Set\_X

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Glcd_Set_X( <b>dim</b> x <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Positions to x dots from the left border of GLCD within the given page.
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Spi_Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Glcd_Set_X(25)

## Spi\_Glcd\_Read\_Data

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Spi_Glcd_Read_Data <b>as</b> byte
<b>Returns</b>	One word from the GLCD memory.
<b>Description</b>	Reads data from from the current location of GLCD memory. Use the functions Spi_Glcd_Set_Side, Spi_Glcd_Set_X, and Spi_Glcd_Set_Page to specify an exact position on GLCD. Then, you can use Spi_Glcd_Write_Data or Spi_Glcd_Read_Data on that location.
<b>Example</b>	tmp = Spi_Glcd_Read_Data()

## Spi\_Glcd\_Write\_Data

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Glcd_Write_Data( <b>dim</b> data <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Writes data to the current location in GLCD memory and moves to the next location.
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Spi_Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Glcd_Write_Data(data)

## Spi\_Glcd\_Fill

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Glcd_Fill( <b>dim</b> pattern <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Fills the GLCD memory with byte pattern. To clear the GLCD screen, use Spi_Glcd_Fill(0); to fill the screen completely, use Spi_Glcd_Fill(0xFF).
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Spi_Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Glcd_Fill(0)    ' Clear screen

## Spi\_Glcd\_Dot

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Glcd_Dot( <b>dim</b> x, y, color <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Draws a dot on the GLCD at coordinates (x, y). Parameter color determines the dot state: 0 clears dot, 1 puts a dot, and 2 inverts dot state.
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Spi_Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Glcd_Dot(0, 0, 2)    ' Invert the dot in the upper left corner

## Spi\_Glcd\_Line

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Glcd_Line( <b>dim</b> x1, y1, x2, y2, color <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Draws a line on the GLCD from (x1, y1) to (x2, y2). Parameter color determines the dot state: 0 draws an empty line (clear dots), 1 draws a full line (put dots), and 2 draws a “smart” line (invert each dot).
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Spi_Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Glcd_Line(0, 63, 50, 0, 2)

## Spi\_Glcd\_V\_Line

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Glcd_V_Line( <b>dim</b> y1, y2, x, color <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Similar to Spi_Glcd_Line, draws a vertical line on the GLCD from (x, y1) to (x, y2).
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Spi_Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Glcd_V_Line(0, 63, 0, 1)

## Spi\_Glcd\_H\_Line

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Glcd_H_Line( <b>dim</b> x1, x2, y, color <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Similar to Spi_Glcd_Line, draws a horizontal line on the GLCD from (x1, y) to (x2, y).
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Spi_Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Glcd_H_Line(0, 127, 0, 1)

## Spi\_Glcd\_Rectangle

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Glcd_Rectangle( <b>dim</b> x1, y1, x2, y2, color <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Draws a rectangle on the GLCD. Parameters (x1, y1) set the upper left corner, (x2, y2) set the bottom right corner. Parameter color defines the border: 0 draws an empty border (clear dots), 1 draws a solid border (put dots), and 2 draws a “smart” border (invert each dot).
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Spi_Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Glcd_Rectangle(10, 0, 30, 35, 1)

## Spi\_Glcd\_Box

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Glcd_Box( <b>dim</b> x1, y1, x2, y2, color <b>as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Draws a box on the GLCD. Parameters (x1, y1) set the upper left corner, (x2, y2) set the bottom right corner. Parameter color defines the fill: 0 draws a white box (clear dots), 1 draws a full box (put dots), and 2 draws an inverted box (invert each dot).
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Spi_Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Glcd_Box(10, 0, 30, 35, 1)

## Spi\_Glcd\_Circle

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Glcd_Circle( <b>dim</b> x, y, radius, color <b>as integer</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Draws a circle on the GLCD, centered at (x, y) with radius. Parameter color defines the circle line: 0 draws an empty line (clear dots), 1 draws a solid line (put dots), and 2 draws a “smart” line (invert each dot).
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Spi_Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Glcd_Circle(63, 31, 25, 1)

## Spi\_Glcd\_Set\_Font

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Glcd_Set_Font( <b>dim</b> font_address <b>as</b> longint, <b>dim</b> font_width, font_height <b>as</b> byte, <b>dim</b> font_offset <b>as</b> word)
<b>Description</b>	<p>Sets the font for text display routines, Spi_Glcd_Write_Char and Spi_Glcd_Write_Text. Font needs to be formatted as an array of byte. Parameter font_address specifies the address of the font; you can pass a font name with the @ operator. Parameters font_width and font_height specify the width and height of characters in dots. Font width should not exceed 128 dots, and font height should not exceed 8 dots. Parameter font_offset determines the ASCII character from which the supplied font starts. Demo fonts supplied with the library have an offset of 32, which means that they start with space.</p> <p>If no font is specified, Spi_Glcd_Write_Char and Spi_Glcd_Write_Text will use the default 5x8 font supplied with the library. You can create your own fonts by following the guidelines given in the file "GLCD_Fonts.ppas". This file contains the default fonts for GLCD, and is located in your installation folder, "Extra Examples" &gt; "GLCD".</p>
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Spi_Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	<i>' Use the custom 5x7 font "myfont" which starts with space (32):</i> Spi_Glcd_Set_Font(@myfont, 5, 7, 32)

## Glcd\_Write\_Char

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Glcd_Write_Char( <b>dim</b> character, x, page, color <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	<p>Prints character at page (one of 8 GLCD lines, 0..7), x dots away from the left border of display. Parameter color defines the "fill": 0 writes a "white" letter (clear dots), 1 writes a solid letter (put dots), and 2 writes a "smart" letter (invert each dot).</p> <p>Use routine Spi_Glcd_Set_Font to specify font, or the default 5x7 font (included with the library) will be used.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized, see Spi_Glcd_Init. Use the Spi_Glcd_Set_Font to specify the font for display; if no font is specified, the default 5x8 font supplied with the library will be used.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Glcd_Write_Char("C", 0, 0, 1)

## Spi\_Glcd\_Write\_Text

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Glcd_Write_Text( <b>dim</b> text <b>as</b> string[20], <b>dim</b> x, page, color <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	<p>Prints text at page (one of 8 GLCD lines, 0..7), x dots away from the left border of display. Parameter color defines the “fill”: 0 prints a “white” letters (clear dots), 1 prints solid letters (put dots), and 2 prints “smart” letters (invert each dot).</p> <p>Use routine Spi_Glcd_Set_Font to specify font, or the default 5x7 font (included with the library) will be used.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized, see Spi_Glcd_Init. Use the Spi_Glcd_Set_Font to specify the font for display; if no font is specified, the default 5x8 font supplied with the library will be used.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Glcd_Write_Text("Hello world!", 0, 0, 1)

## Spi\_Glcd\_Image

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Spi_Glcd_Image( <b>dim</b> image <b>as</b> byte[0..1023])
<b>Description</b>	Displays bitmap image on the GLCD. Parameter image should be formatted as an array of 1024 bytes. Use the mikroPascal’s integrated Bitmap-to-LCD editor (menu option Tools > Graphic LCD Editor) to convert image to a constant array suitable for display on GLCD.
<b>Requires</b>	GLCD needs to be initialized. See Spi_Glcd_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Spi_Glcd_Image(my_image)



## Library Example

The following drawing demo tests advanced routines of GLCD library.

```

program Spi_Glcd_Test
dim j, k as byte

main:
    Spi_Glcd_Init()

    while TRUE

        ' Draw circles
        Spi_Glcd_Fill(0) ' Clear screen
        Spi_Glcd_Write_Text("Circles", 0, 0, 1)

        j = 4

        while j < 31
            Spi_Glcd_Circle(63, 31, j, 2)
            j = j + 4
        wend
        Delay_ms(4000)

        ' Draw Lines
        Spi_Glcd_Fill(0) ' Clear screen
        Spi_Glcd_Write_Text("Lines", 0, 0, 1)

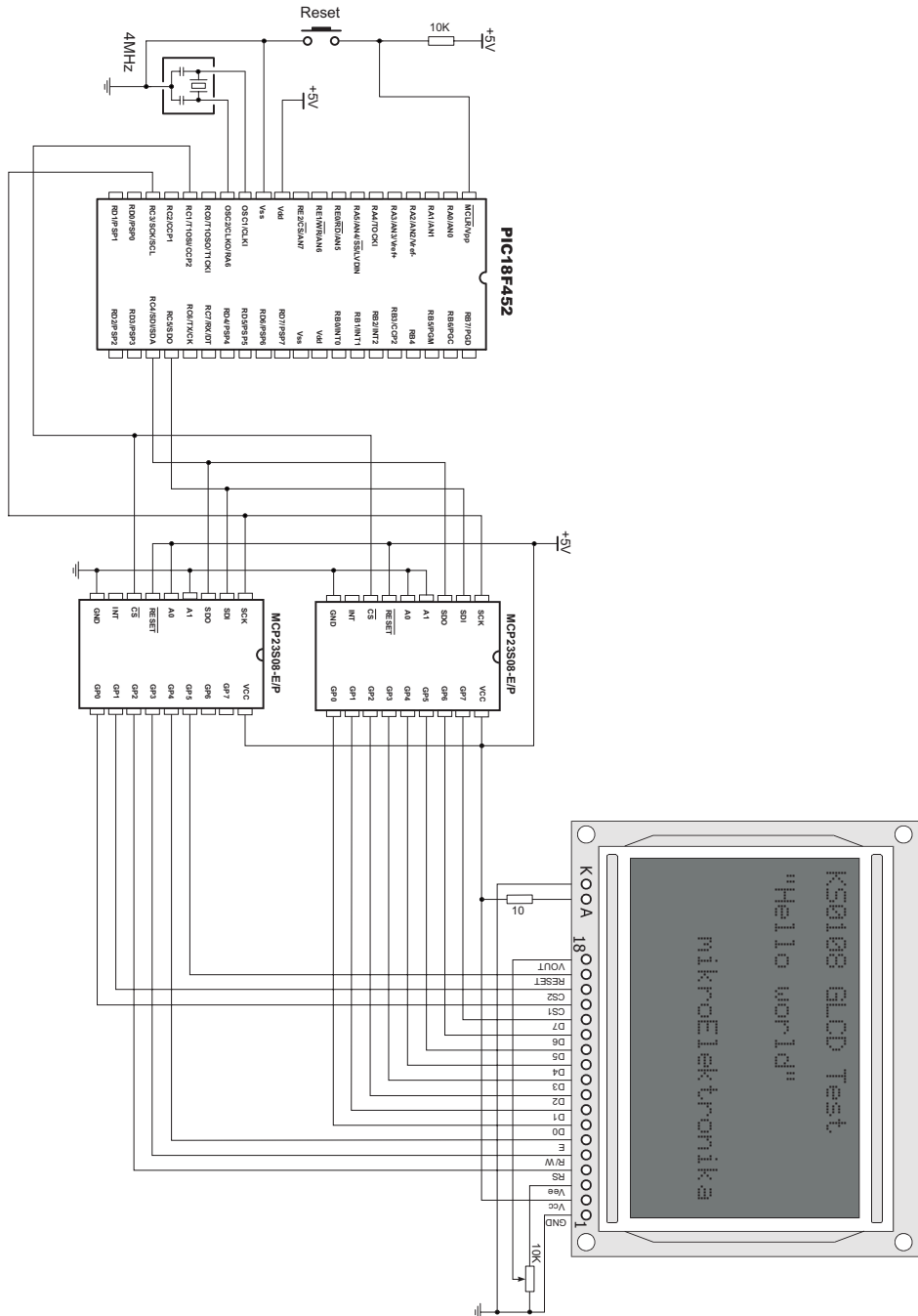
        for j = 0 to 15
            k = j*4 + 3
            Spi_Glcd_Line(0, 0, 127, k, 2)
        next j

        for j = 0 to 31
            k = j*4 + 3;
            Spi_Glcd_Line(0, 63, k, 0, 2)
        next j
        Delay_ms(4000)

    wend

end.
    
```

## Hardware Connection



## USART Library

USART hardware module is available with a number of PICmicros. mikroBasic USART Library provides comfortable work with the Asynchronous (full duplex) mode. You can easily communicate with other devices via RS232 protocol (for example with PC, see the figure at the end of the topic – RS232 HW connection). You need a PIC MCU with hardware integrated USART, for example PIC16F877. Then, simply use the functions listed below.

**Note:** USART library functions support module on PORTB, PORTC, or PORTG, and will not work with modules on other ports. Examples for PICmicros with module on other ports can be found in “Examples” in mikroBasic installation folder.

### Library Routines

```
Usart_Init
Usart_Data_Ready
Usart_Read
Usart_Write
```

**Note:** Certain PICmicros with two USART modules, such as P18F8520, require you to specify the module you want to use. Simply append the number 1 or 2 to a function name. For example, Usart\_Write2.

### Usart\_Init

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Usart_Init( <b>dim</b> baud_rate <b>as</b> longint)
<b>Description</b>	<p>Initializes hardware USART module with the desired baud rate. Refer to the device data sheet for baud rates allowed for specific Fosc. If you specify the unsupported baud rate, compiler will report an error.</p> <p>Usart_Init needs to be called before using other functions from USART Library.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	You need PIC MCU with hardware USART.
<b>Example</b>	Usart_Init(2400)    ' Establish communication at 2400 bps

## Usart\_Data\_Ready

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Usart_Data_Ready <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Function returns 1 if data is ready or 0 if there is no data.
<b>Description</b>	Use the function to test if data in receive buffer is ready for reading.
<b>Requires</b>	USART HW module must be initialized and communication established before using this function. See Usart_Init.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>' If data is ready, read it: <b>if</b> Usart_Data_Ready = 1 <b>then</b>     receive = Usart_Read <b>end if</b></pre>

## Usart\_Read

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Usart_Read <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns the received byte. If byte is not received, returns 0.
<b>Description</b>	Function receives a byte via USART. Use the function Usart_Data_Ready to test if data is ready first.
<b>Requires</b>	USART HW module must be initialized and communication established before using this function. See Usart_Init.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>' If data is ready, read it: <b>if</b> Usart_Data_Ready = 1 <b>then</b>     receive = Usart_Read <b>end if</b></pre>

## Usart\_Write

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Usart_Write( <b>dim</b> data <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	Function transmits a byte (data) via USART.
<b>Requires</b>	USART HW module must be initialized and communication established before using this function. See Usart_Init.
<b>Example</b>	Usart_Write(\$1E) <i>' send chunk via USART</i>

## Library Example

The example demonstrates simple data exchange via USART. When PIC receives the data, it immediately sends it back. If PIC is connected to the PC (see the figure below), you can test the example from mikroBasic terminal for RS232 communication, menu choice Tools > Terminal.

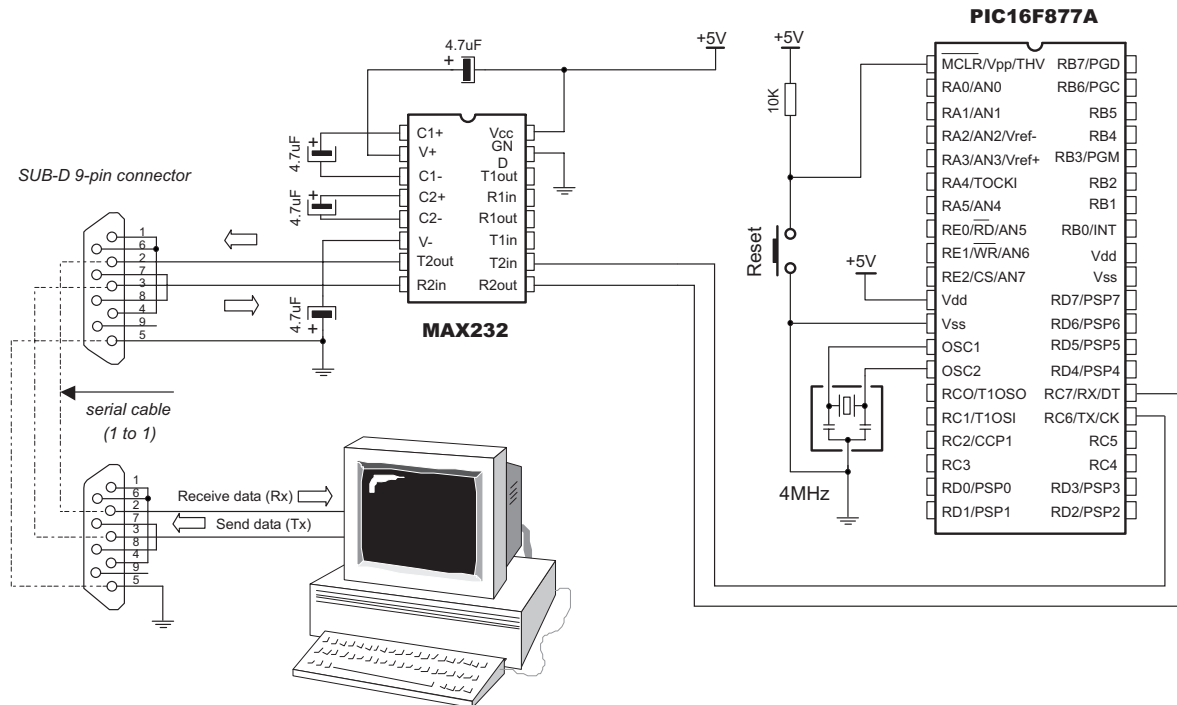
```

program rs232_com_test
dim received_byte as byte

main:
  Usart_Init(2400)                                ' Initialize USART module
  while true
    if Usart_Data_Ready = 1 then                  ' If data is received
      received_byte = Usart_Read                  ' Read received data
      Usart_Write(received_byte)                  ' Send data via USART
    end if
  wend
end.

```

## Hardware Connection



## USB HID Library

Universal Serial Bus (USB) provides a serial bus standard for connecting a wide variety of devices, including computers, cell phones, game consoles, PDAs, etc.

mikroBasic includes a library for working with human interface devices via Universal Serial Bus. A human interface device or HID is a type of computer device that interacts directly with and takes input from humans, such as the keyboard, mouse, graphics tablet, and the like.

Each project based on the USB HID library should include a descriptor source file which contains vendor id and name, product id and name, report length, and other relevant information. To create a descriptor file, use the integrated USB HID terminal of mikroBasic (Tools > USB HID Terminal). The default name for descriptor file is USBdsc.pbas, but you may rename it. The provided code in the “Examples” folder works at 48MHz, and the flags should not be modified without consulting the appropriate datasheet first.

### Library Routines

```
Hid_Enable
Hid_Read
Hid_Write
Hid_Disable
```

### Hid\_Enable

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Hid_Enable( <b>dim</b> readbuff, writebuff <b>as word</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Enables USB HID communication. Parameters readbuff and writebuff are the addresses of Read Buffer and the Write Buffer, respectively, which are used for HID communication. You can pass buffer names with the @ operator.</p> <p>This function needs to be called before using other routines of USB HID Library.</p>
<b>Example</b>	Hid_Enable(@rd, @wr)

## Hid\_Read

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Hid_Read <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Number of characters in Read Buffer received from Host.
<b>Description</b>	Receives message from host and stores it in the Read Buffer. Function returns the number of characters received in Read Buffer.
<b>Requires</b>	USB HID needs to be enabled before using this function. See Hid_Enable.
<b>Example</b>	length = Hid_Read

## Hid\_Write

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Hid_Write( <b>dim</b> writebuff <b>as word</b> , <b>dim</b> len <b>as byte</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function sends data from Write Buffer writebuff to host. Write Buffer is the address of the parameter used in initialization; see Hid_Enable. You can pass a buffer name with the @ operator. Parameter len should specify a length of the data to be transmitted.
<b>Requires</b>	USB HID needs to be enabled before using this function. See Hid_Enable.
<b>Example</b>	Hid_Write(@wr, len)

## Hid\_Disable

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Hid_Disable
<b>Description</b>	Disables USB HID communication.
<b>Example</b>	Hid_Disable



## Library Example

The following example continually sends sequence of numbers 0..255 to the PC via Universal Serial Bus.

```

program hid_test

dim k as byte
dim userRD_buffer as byte[64]
dim userWR_buffer as byte[64]

sub procedure interrupt
  asm
    CALL _Hid_InterruptProc
  end asm
end sub

sub procedure Init_Main
  ' Disable all interrupts
  ' Disable GIE, PEIE, TMR0IE, INT0IE, RBIE
  INTCON = 0
  INTCON2 = $F5
  INTCON3 = $C0
  ' Disable Priority Levels on interrupts
  RCON.IPEN = 0
  PIE1 = 0
  PIE2 = 0
  PIR1 = 0
  PIR2 = 0

  ' Configure all ports with analog function as digital
  ADCON1 = ADCON1 or $0F

  TRISA = 0
  TRISB = 0
  TRISC = $FF
  TRISD = $FF
  TRISE = $07

  LATA = 0
  LATB = 0
  LATC = 0
  LATD = 0
  LATE = 0

  ' continues ..

```

```

' .. continued

' Clear user RAM
' Banks [00 .. 07] ( 8 x 256 = 2048 Bytes )
asm
    LFSCR    FSR0, $000
    MOVLW    $08
    CLRF     POSTINC0, 0
    CPFSEQ   FSR0H, 0
    BRA      $ - 2
end asm

' Timer 0
TOCON = $07;
TMR0H = (65536 - 156) >> 8
TMR0L = (65536 - 156) and $FF
INTCON.T0IE = 1           ' Enable T0IE
TOCON.TMR0ON = 1
end sub

*** Main Program **

main:
    Init_Main()
    Hid_Enable(@userRD_buffer, @userWR_buffer)

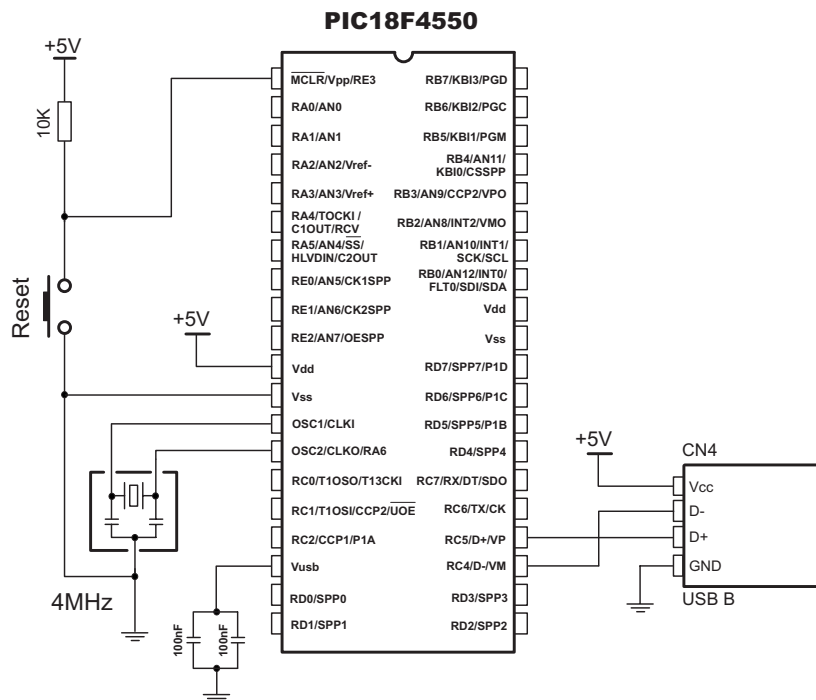
    do
        for k = 0 to 255
            ' Prepare send buffer
            userWR_buffer[0] = k

            ' Send the number via USB
            Hid_Write(@userWR_buffer, 1)
        next k
    loop until FALSE

    Hid_Disable
end.

```

## HW Connection



## Util Library

Util library contains miscellaneous routines useful for project development.

### Button

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Button( <b>dim byref</b> port <b>as byte</b> , <b>dim</b> pin, time, active_state <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns 0 or 255.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Function eliminates the influence of contact flickering upon pressing a button (debouncing).</p> <p>Parameter <code>port</code> specifies the location of the button; parameter <code>pin</code> is the pin number on designated <code>port</code> and goes from 0..7; parameter <code>time</code> is a debounce period in milliseconds; parameter <code>active_state</code> can be either 0 or 1, and it determines if the button is active upon logical zero or logical one.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p>Example reads RB0, to which the button is connected; on transition from 1 to 0 (release of button), PORTD is inverted:</p> <pre> while true   if Button(PORTB, 0, 1, 1) then     oldstate = 255   end if   if oldstate and Button(PORTB, 0, 1, 0) then     PORTD = not(PORTD)     oldstate = 0   end if wend </pre>

# Conversions Library

mikroBasic Conversions Library provides routines for converting numerals to strings, and routines for BCD/decimal conversions.  
You can get text representation of numerical value by passing it to one of the following routines:

## Library Routines

ByteToStr  
ShortToStr  
WordToStr  
WordToStrWithZeros  
IntToStr  
LongintToStr  
FloatToStr

Following functions convert decimal values to BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) and vice versa:

Bcd2Dec  
Dec2Bcd  
Bcd2Dec16  
Dec2Bcd16

## ByteToStr

Prototype	<b>sub procedure</b> ByteToStr( <b>dim</b> number <b>as</b> byte, <b>dim</b> byref output <b>as</b> string[3])
Description	Procedure creates an output string out of a small unsigned number (numerical value less than \$100). Output string has fixed width of 3 characters; remaining positions on the left (if any) are filled with blanks.
Example	<pre><b>dim</b> t <b>as</b> word <b>dim</b> txt <b>as</b> string[3] '... t = 24 ByteToStr(t, txt)  ' txt is " 24" (one blank here)</pre>

## ShortToStr

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> ShortToStr( <b>dim</b> number <b>as</b> short, <b>dim</b> byref output <b>as</b> string[4])
<b>Description</b>	Procedure creates an output string out of a small signed number (numerical value less than \$100). Output string has fixed width of 4 characters; remaining positions on the left (if any) are filled with blanks.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> <b>dim</b> t <b>as</b> short <b>dim</b> txt <b>as</b> string[4]; '... t = -24 ShortToStr(t, txt)  ' txt is " -24" (one blank here) </pre>

## WordToStr

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> WordToStr( <b>dim</b> number <b>as</b> word, <b>dim</b> byref output <b>as</b> string[5])
<b>Description</b>	Procedure creates an output string out of an unsigned number (numerical value of word type). Output string has fixed width of 5 characters; remaining positions on the left (if any) are filled with blanks.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> <b>dim</b> t <b>as</b> word <b>dim</b> txt <b>as</b> string[5] '... t = 437 WordToStr(t, txt)  ' txt is " 437" (two blanks here) </pre>

## WordToStrWithZeros

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> WordToStrWithZeros( <b>dim</b> number <b>as</b> word, <b>dim</b> byref output <b>as</b> string[5])
<b>Description</b>	Procedure creates an output string out of an unsigned number (numerical value of word type). Output string has fixed width of 5 characters; remaining positions on the left (if any) are filled with zeros.
<b>Requires</b>	The output string should have the exact length as specified in the procedure prototype (5 characters).
<b>Example</b>	<pre> <b>dim</b> t <b>as</b> word <b>dim</b> txt <b>as</b> string[5] '... t = 437 WordToStr(t, txt)  ' txt is " 437" (two blanks here) </pre>

## IntToStr

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> IntToStr( <b>dim</b> number <b>as</b> integer, <b>dim byref</b> output <b>as</b> string[6])
<b>Description</b>	Procedure creates an output string out of a signed number (numerical value of integer type). Output string has fixed width of 6 characters; remaining positions on the left (if any) are filled with blanks.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> <b>dim</b> j <b>as</b> integer <b>dim</b> txt <b>as</b> string[6] '... j = -4220 IntToStr(j, txt)  ' txt is " -4220" (one blank here) </pre>

## LongintToStr

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> LongintToStr( <b>dim</b> number <b>as</b> longint, <b>dim byref</b> output <b>as</b> string[11])
<b>Description</b>	Procedure creates an output string out of a large signed number (numerical value of longint type). Output string has fixed width of 11 characters; remaining positions on the left (if any) are filled with blanks.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> <b>dim</b> jj <b>as</b> longint <b>dim</b> txt <b>as</b> string[11] '... jj = -3700000 LongintToStr(jj, txt) ' txt is "  -3700000" (three blanks here) </pre>

## FloatToStr

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> FloatToStr( <b>dim</b> input <b>as</b> float, <b>dim</b> byref output <b>as</b> string[17])
<b>Description</b>	<p>Procedure creates string out of the input parameter, which should be a floating point number in the longint range (<math>\pm 2147483648</math>). Parameter output accepts the created string. The result is given in format "<i>integer.fraction</i>", left aligned.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Procedure won't return the correct result if input exceeds the longint range! You'll need to create a custom routine if you want to handle such large numbers.</p> <p>The <i>integer</i> part has flexible width of up to 11 characters (10 digits + sign). If the actual integer part is shorter than that, string will wrap to the integer's length. The <i>fraction</i> part is always 5 characters long. If the actual fraction is shorter than 5 digits, remaining chars on the right will be filled with zeroes; if the fraction exceeds 5 digits, the <i>fraction</i> part will be trimmed.</p>
<b>Requires</b>	If you want to use the FloatToStr for printing on LCD, ensure that your program clears/refreshes the display with each printing of a string. Otherwise, LCD will display the remnants (rightmost digits) of the previous string, if it was longer than the presently displayed one.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>// An example which prints value of a float variable on LCD: <b>dim</b> input <b>as</b> float <b>dim</b> output <b>as</b> string[17] main: input = -3.1415 FloatToStr(input, output) Lcd_Out_Cp(output)  ' Print "-3.14150" on LCD</pre>

## Bcd2Dec

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Bcd2Dec( <b>dim</b> bcdnum <b>as</b> byte) <b>as</b> byte
<b>Returns</b>	Returns converted decimal value.
<b>Description</b>	Converts 8-bit BCD numeral bcdnum to its decimal equivalent.
<b>Example</b>	<pre><b>dim</b> a, b <b>as</b> byte a = \$52 b = Bcd2Dec(a)  ' b equals 52</pre>



## Dec2Bcd

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Dec2Bcd( <b>dim</b> decnum <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns converted BCD value.
<b>Description</b>	Converts 8-bit decimal value decnum to BCD.
<b>Example</b>	<pre><b>dim</b> a, b <b>as byte</b> a = 52 b = Dec2Bcd(a)   ' b equals \$52</pre>

## Bcd2Dec16

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Bcd2Dec16( <b>dim</b> bcdnum <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns converted decimal value.
<b>Description</b>	Converts 16-bit BCD numeral bcdnum to its decimal equivalent.
<b>Example</b>	<pre><b>dim</b> a, b <b>as word</b> a = 1234 b = Bcd2Dec16(a)   ' b equals 4660</pre>

## Dec2Bcd16

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Dec2Bcd16( <b>dim</b> decnum <b>as byte</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Returns</b>	Returns converted BCD value.
<b>Description</b>	Converts 16-bit decimal value decnum to BCD.
<b>Example</b>	<pre><b>dim</b> a, b <b>as word</b> a = 4660 b = Dec2Bcd16(a)   ' b equals 1234</pre>

## Delays Library

mikroBasic provides a basic utility routines for creating software delay. You can create more advanced and flexible versions based on this library.

**Note:** Routines do not provide an entirely accurate delay as it depends on clock specified in Project settings.

### Delay\_us

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Delay_us( <b>const</b> time_in_us <b>as word</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Creates a software delay in duration of time_in_us microseconds (a constant). Range of applicable constants depends on the oscillator frequency.
<b>Example</b>	Delay_us(10)    ' <i>Ten microseconds pause</i>

### Delay\_ms

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Delay_ms( <b>const</b> time_in_ms <b>as word</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Creates a software delay in duration of time_in_ms milliseconds (a constant). Range of applicable constants depends on the oscillator frequency.
<b>Example</b>	Delay_ms(1000)    ' <i>One second pause</i>

## Vdelay\_ms

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Vdelay_ms( <b>dim</b> time_in_ms <b>as</b> word)
<b>Description</b>	Creates a software delay in duration of time_in_ms milliseconds (a variable). Generated delay is not as precise as the delay created by Delay_ms.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> pause = 1000 ' ... Vdelay_ms(pause)    ' ~ one second pause </pre>

## Delay\_Cyc

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Delay_Cyc( <b>dim</b> cycles_div_by_10 <b>as</b> byte)
<b>Description</b>	<p>Creates a delay based on MCU clock. Delay lasts for 10 times the input parameter in MCU cycles. Input parameter needs to be in range 3 .. 255.</p> <p>Note that Delay_Cyc is library function rather than a built-in routine; it is presented in this topic for the sake of convenience.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> Delay_Cyc(10)    ' Hundred MCU cycles pause </pre>

## Math Library

Math Library implements a number of common mathematical functions.

### Library Routines

Acos  
Asin  
Atan  
Atan2  
Ceil  
Cos  
CosE3  
Cosh  
Exp  
Fabs  
Floor  
Frexp  
Fmod  
Ldexp  
Log  
Log10  
Modf  
Pow  
Sin  
SinE3  
Sinh  
Sqrt  
Tan  
Tanh

## Acos

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Acos ( <b>dim</b> x <b>as float</b> ) <b>as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the arc cosine of parameter x; that is, the value whose cosine is x. Input parameter x must be between -1 and 1 (inclusive). The return value is in radians, between 0 and pi (inclusive).

## Asin

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Asin( <b>dim</b> x <b>as float</b> ) <b>as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the arc sine of parameter x; that is, the value whose sine is x. Input parameter x must be between -1 and 1 (inclusive). The return value is in radians, between -pi/2 and pi/2 (inclusive).

## Atan

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Atan( <b>dim</b> x <b>as float</b> ) <b>as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function computes the arc tangent of parameter x; that is, the value whose tangent is x. The return value is in radians, between -pi/2 and pi/2 (inclusive).

## Atan2

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Atan2( <b>dim</b> x, y <b>as float</b> ) <b>as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	This is the two argument arc tangent function. It is similar to computing the arc tangent of y/x, except that the signs of both arguments are used to determine the quadrant of the result, and x is permitted to be zero. The return value is in radians, between -pi and pi (inclusive).

## Ceil

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Ceil( <b>dim</b> x <b>as float</b> ) <b>as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function returns value of parameter x rounded up to the next whole number.

## Cos

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Cos( <b>dim</b> x <b>as float</b> ) <b>as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the cosine of x in radians. The return value is from -1 to 1.

## CosE3

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> CosE3( <b>dim</b> x <b>as word</b> ) <b>as integer</b>
<b>Description</b>	<p>Function takes parameter x which represents angle in degrees, and returns its cosine multiplied by 1000 and rounded up to the nearest integer:</p> <pre>result := round_up(cos(x)*1000)</pre> <p>The function is implemented as a lookup table; maximum error obtained is <math>\pm 1</math>.</p>

## Cosh

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Cosh( <b>dim</b> x <b>as float</b> ) <b>as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the hyperbolic cosine of x, defined mathematically as $(e^x + e^{-x}) / 2$ . If the value of x is too large (if overflow occurs), the function fails.

## Exp

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Exp( <b>dim</b> x <b>as float</b> ) <b>as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the value of e — the base of natural logarithms — raised to the power of x (i.e. $e^x$ ).

## Fabs

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Fabs( <b>dim</b> x <b>as float</b> ) <b>as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the absolute (i.e. positive) value of x.

## Floor

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Floor( <b>dim</b> x <b>as float</b> ) <b>as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function returns value of parameter x rounded down to the nearest integer.

## Fmod

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Fmod( <b>dim</b> x, y <b>as float</b> ) <b>as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function computes the floating point remainder of x/y. Function returns the value $x - i * y$ for some integer i such that, if y is nonzero, the result has the same sign as x and magnitude less than the magnitude of y. If y is zero, the fmod function returns zero.

## Frexp

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Frexp( <b>dim</b> num <b>as float</b> , <b>dim</b> n <b>as ^integer</b> ) <b>as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function splits a floating-point value <code>num</code> into a normalized fraction and an integral power of 2. Return value is the normalized fraction, and the integer exponent is stored in the object pointed to by <code>n</code> .

## Ldexp

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Ldexp( <b>dim</b> num <b>as float</b> , <b>dim</b> n <b>as integer</b> ) <b>as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the result of multiplying the floating-point number <code>num</code> by 2 raised to the power <code>n</code> (i.e. returns $x * 2^n$ ).

## Log

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Log( <b>dim</b> x <b>as float</b> ) <b>as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the natural logarithm of <code>x</code> (i.e. $\log_e(x)$ ).

## Log10

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Log10( <b>dim</b> x <b>as float</b> ) <b>as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the base-10 logarithm of <code>x</code> (i.e. $\log_{10}(x)$ ).



## Modf

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Modf( <b>dim</b> num <b>as</b> float, <b>dim</b> whole <b>as</b> ^float) <b>as</b> float
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the signed fractional component of num, placing its whole number component into the variable pointed to by whole.

## Pow

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Pow( <b>dim</b> x, y <b>as</b> float) <b>as</b> float
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the value of x raised to the power of y (i.e. $x^y$ ). If the x is negative, function will automatically cast the y into longint.

## Sin

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Sin( <b>dim</b> x <b>as</b> float) <b>as</b> float
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the sine of x in radians. The return value is from -1 to 1.

## SinE3

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> SinE3( <b>dim</b> x <b>as</b> word) <b>as</b> integer
<b>Description</b>	<p>Function takes parameter x which represents angle in degrees, and returns its sine multiplied by 1000 and rounded up to the nearest integer:</p> <pre>result := round_up(sin(x)*1000)</pre> <p>The function is implemented as a lookup table; maximum error obtained is <math>\pm 1</math>.</p>

## Sinh

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function Sinh(dim x as float) as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the hyperbolic sine of x, defined mathematically as $(e^x - e^{-x}) / 2$ . If the value of x is too large (if overflow occurs), the function fails.

## Sqrt

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function Sqrt(dim x as float) as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the non negative square root of num.

## Tan

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function Tan(dim x as float) as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the tangent of x in radians. The return value spans the allowed range of floating point in mikroPascal.

## Tanh

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function Tanh(dim x as float) as float</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the hyperbolic tangent of x, defined mathematically as $\sinh(x) / \cosh(x)$ .

## String Library

The String Library provides a number of routines for string handling.

### Library Routines

Memchr  
Memcmp  
Memcpy  
Memmove  
Memset  
Strcat  
Strchr  
Strcmp  
Strcpy  
Strcspn  
Strlen  
Strncat  
Strncmp  
Strncpy  
Strpbrk  
Strrchr  
Strspn  
Strstr  
strAppendSuf  
strAppendPre

## Memchr

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Memchr ( <b>dim</b> p <b>as</b> word, <b>dim</b> ch <b>as</b> char, <b>dim</b> n <b>as</b> word) <b>as</b> word
<b>Description</b>	<p>Function locates the first occurrence of byte ch in the initial n bytes of memory area starting at the address p. Function returns the offset of this occurrence from the memory address p or \$FFFF if the character was not found.</p> <p>For parameter p you can use either a numerical value (literal/variable/constant) indicating memory address or a dereferenced value of an object, for example @mystring or @PORTB.</p>

## Memcmp

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Memcmp ( <b>dim</b> p1, p2, n <b>as</b> word) <b>as</b> integer
<b>Description</b>	<p>Function returns a positive, negative, or zero value indicating the relationship of first n bytes of memory areas starting at addresses p1 and p2.</p> <p>The Memcmp function compares two memory areas starting at addresses p1 and p2 for n bytes and returns a value indicating their relationship as follows:</p> <p><b>Value    Meaning</b></p> <p>&lt; 0      p1 "less than" p2</p> <p>= 0      p1 "equal to" p2</p> <p>&gt; 0      p1 "greater than" p2</p> <p>The value returned by function is determined by the difference between the values of the first pair of bytes that differ in the strings being compared.</p> <p>For parameters p1 and p2 you can use either a numerical value (literal/variable/constant) indicating memory address or a dereferenced value of an object, for example @mystring or @PORTB.</p>

## Memcpy

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Mmemcpy( <b>dim</b> p1, p2, n <b>as word</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Function copies n bytes from the memory area starting at the address p2 to the memory area starting at p1. If these memory buffers overlap, the memcpy function cannot guarantee that bytes are copied before being overwritten. If these buffers do overlap, use the Memmove function.</p> <p>For parameters p1 and p2 you can use either a numerical value (literal/variable/constant) indicating memory address or a dereferenced value of an object, for example @mystring or @PORTB.</p>

## Memmove

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Memmove( <b>dim</b> p1, p2, n <b>as word</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Function copies n bytes from the memory area starting at the address p2 to the memory area starting at p1. If these memory buffers overlap, the Memmove function ensures that bytes in p2 are copied to p1 before being overwritten.</p> <p>For parameters p1 and p2 you can use either a numerical value (literal/variable/constant) indicating memory address or a dereferenced value of an object, for example @mystring or @PORTB.</p>

## Memset

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Mmemset( <b>dim</b> p <b>as word</b> , <b>dim</b> ch <b>as char</b> , <b>dim</b> n <b>as word</b> )
<b>Description</b>	<p>Function fills the first n bytes in the memory area starting at the address p with the value of byte ch.</p> <p>For parameter p you can use either a numerical value (literal/variable/constant) indicating memory address or a dereferenced value of an object, for example @mystring or @PORTB.</p>

## Strcat

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Strcat( <b>dim byref</b> s1, s2 <b>as string</b> [100])
<b>Description</b>	Function appends the value of string s2 to string s1 and terminates s1 with a null character.

## Strchr

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Strchr( <b>dim byref</b> s <b>as string</b> [100], <b>dim ch as char</b> ) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Description</b>	<p>Function searches the string s for the first occurrence of the character ch. The null character terminating s is not included in the search.</p> <p>Function returns the position (index) of the first character ch found in s; if no matching character was found, function returns \$FF.</p>

## Strcmp

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Strcmp( <b>dim byref</b> s1, s2 <b>as string</b> [100]) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Description</b>	<p>Function lexicographically compares the contents of strings s1 and s2 and returns a value indicating their relationship:</p> <p><b>Value    Meaning</b></p> <p>&lt; 0      s1 "less than" s2</p> <p>= 0      s1 "equal to" s2</p> <p>&gt; 0      s1 "greater than" s2</p> <p>The value returned by function is determined by the difference between the values of the first pair of bytes that differ in the strings being compared.</p>

## Strcpy

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Strcpy( <b>dim byref</b> s1, s2 <b>as string</b> [100])
<b>Description</b>	Function copies the value of string s2 to the string s1 and appends a null character to the end of s1.

## Strcspn

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Strcspn( <b>dim byref</b> s1, s2 <b>as string</b> [100]) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Description</b>	The strcspn function computes the length of the maximum initial segment of the string pointed to by s1 which consists entirely of characters not from the string pointed to by s2. Function returns the length of the segment.

## Strlen

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Strlen( <b>dim byref</b> s <b>as string</b> [100]) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function returns the length, in bytes, of the string s. The length does not include the null terminating character.

## Strncat

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Strncat( <b>dim byref</b> s1, s2 <b>as string</b> [100], <b>dim n as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Function appends at most n characters from the string s2 to the string s1 and terminates s1 with a null character. If s2 is shorter than n characters, s2 is copied up to and including the null terminating character.

## Strncmp

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Strncmp( <b>dim byref</b> s1, s2 <b>as string</b> [100], <b>dim n as byte</b> ) <b>as integer</b>								
<b>Description</b>	<p>Function lexicographically compares the first n bytes of the strings s1 and s2 and returns a value indicating their relationship:</p> <table> <tr> <td><b>Value</b></td><td><b>Meaning</b></td></tr> <tr> <td>&lt; 0</td><td>s1 "less than" s2</td></tr> <tr> <td>= 0</td><td>s1 "equal to" s2</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt; 0</td><td>s1 "greater than" s2</td></tr> </table> <p>The value returned by function is determined by the difference between the values of the first pair of bytes that differ in the strings being compared (within first n bytes).</p>	<b>Value</b>	<b>Meaning</b>	< 0	s1 "less than" s2	= 0	s1 "equal to" s2	> 0	s1 "greater than" s2
<b>Value</b>	<b>Meaning</b>								
< 0	s1 "less than" s2								
= 0	s1 "equal to" s2								
> 0	s1 "greater than" s2								

## Strncpy

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Strncpy( <b>dim byref</b> s1, s2 <b>as string</b> [100], <b>dim n as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Function copies at most n characters from the string s2 to the string s1. If s2 contains fewer characters than n, s1 is padded out with null characters up to the total length of n characters.



## Strpbrk

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Strpbrk( <b>dim byref</b> s1, s2 <b>as string</b> [100])
<b>Description</b>	Function searches s1 for the first occurrence of any character from the string s2. The null terminator is not included in the search. Function returns an index of the matching character in s1. If s1 contains no characters from s2, function returns \$FF.

## Strrchr

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure</b> Strrchr( <b>dim byref</b> s <b>as string</b> [100], <b>dim ch as byte</b> )
<b>Description</b>	Function searches the string s for the last occurrence of the character ch. The null character terminating s is not included in the search. Function returns an index of the last ch found in s; if no matching character was found, function returns \$FF.

## Strspn

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function</b> Strspn( <b>dim byref</b> s1, s2 <b>as string</b> [100]) <b>as byte</b>
<b>Description</b>	The strspn function computes the length of the maximum initial segment of the string pointed to by s1 which consists entirely of the characters from the string pointed to by s2. Function returns the length of the segment.

## Strstr

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub function Strstr(dim byref s1, s2 as string[100]) as byte</b>
<b>Description</b>	Function locates the first occurrence of the string s2 in the string s1 (excluding the terminating null character). Function returns a number indicating the position of the first occurrence of s2 in s1; if no string was found, function returns \$FF. If s2 is a null string, the function returns 0.

## strAppendSuf

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure strAppendSuf(dim byref s1 as string[100], dim letter as char)</b>
<b>Description</b>	Adds suffix(letter) to string (s1).
<b>Example</b>	txt = "123" strAppendSuf(txt, "4"); ' txt = "1234"

## strAppendPre

<b>Prototype</b>	<b>sub procedure strAppendPre(dim letter as char, dim byref s1 as string[100])</b>
<b>Description</b>	Adds prefix(letter) to string (s1).
<b>Example</b>	txt = "123" strAppendPre("0", txt) ' txt = "0123"

**Contact us:**

If you are experiencing problems with any of our products or you just want additional information, please let us know.

**Technical Support for compiler**

If you are experiencing any trouble with mikroBasic, please do not hesitate to contact us - it is in our mutual interest to solve these issues.

**Discount for schools and universities**

mikroElektronika offers a special discount for educational institutions. If you would like to purchase mikroBasic for purely educational purposes, please contact us.

**Problems with transport or delivery**

If you want to report a delay in delivery or any other problem concerning distribution of our products, please use the link given below.

**Would you like to become mikroElektronika's distributor?**

We in mikroElektronika are looking forward to new partnerships. If you would like to help us by becoming distributor of our products, please let us know.

**Other**

If you have any other question, comment or a business proposal, please contact us:

**mikroElektronika**  
**Admirala Geprata 1B**  
**11000 Belgrade**  
**EUROPE**

**Phone: + 381 (11) 30 66 377, + 381 (11) 30 66 378**

**Fax: + 381 (11) 30 66 379**

**E-mail: [office@mikroelektronika.co.yu](mailto:office@mikroelektronika.co.yu)**

**Web: [www.mikroelektronika.co.yu](http://www.mikroelektronika.co.yu)**